

Index

NOTES

1. The Arabic definite article (*al-*), the transliteration symbols for the Arabic letters *hamza* (ʾ) and *ʿayn* (ʿ), and distinctions between different letters transliterated by the same Latin character (e.g. *d* and *ḍ*) are ignored for purposes of alphabetisation.
2. In the case of personal names sharing the same first element, rulers are listed first, then individuals with patronymics, then any others.
3. Locators in italics denote illustrations.

Abāḍiyya *see* Ibāḍiyya

ʿAbbādān 65

ʿAbbās I, Shāh 120, 266, 273, 281, 300–301, 630

ʿAbbās II, Shāh 266

al-ʿAbbās ibn ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib 109, 112

ʿAbbās ibn Firnās 592

ʿAbbās ibn Nāsiḥ 592

ʿAbbāsids

ʿAbbāsīd revolution 30, 228–229, 447; and religion 110, 111–112, 228; and translation movement 566, 567–568

foundation of dynasty 30, 31, 229

Mongols destroy Baghdad caliphate 30, 49

rump caliphate in Cairo 49, 56, 246, 251,

253–254

see also individual caliphs and individual topics

ʿAbbāsiyya *see* Hāshimiyya

ʿAbd Allāh ibn al-ʿAbbās 111, 225

ʿAbd Allāh al-Aṭṭaḥ 114

ʿAbd Allāh al-Mahdī 123, 124, 125–126, 232

ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd ibn Yaḥyā *al-kātib* 384–386, 388

ʿAbd al-Ḥaqq Dihlavī 469

ʿAbd al-Ḥaqq al-Islāmī 185

ʿAbd al-Ḥayy Tābān 442

ʿAbd al-Jabbār 533

ʿAbd al-Karīm al-Jīlī 103

ʿAbd al-Karīm al-Sammān 103

ʿAbd al-Laṭīf 498, 508, 510

ʿAbd al-Malik, Umayyad caliph

Arabisation of administration 385, 590

coinage 334, 335, 688–690, 689

Dome of the Rock built by 690

ʿAbd al-Qādir al-Baghdādī 411

ʿAbd al-Raʿūf al-Singkilī 103, 518

ʿAbd al-Raḥmān II ibn al-Ḥakam, caliph of Cordoba 592, 736

ʿAbd al-Raḥmān III, caliph of Cordoba 621, 663

ʿAbd al-Raḥmān al-Šūfī 599–600, 622

ʿAbd al-Razzāq Samarqandī 455

ʿAbd al-Wāhid ibn Zayd 65

ʿAbdān 123–124

ʿAbdūn ibn Makhlad 397

abjad system 456

ablaq architectural decoration 702

abnāʾ al-dawla 229

Abraham 19, 27, 36, 125, 225

abrogation, theory of 165

Ābrū, Shāh Mubārak 436

absentees 160, 161

landlords 293, 295, 296–297

absolutism

ʿAbbāsīd 162, 229, 233, 570

and law 162, 273

Malay sultanates 257–258

Mongol 288

Abū ʿAbd Allāh al-Shīʿī 124

Abū al-Aswad al-Duʿalī 462

Abū Bakr, caliph 107

accession to caliphate 28, 30–31, 106–107, 225–226, 463

Index

- Abū Bakr, caliph (cont.)
 death 30
khalīfat rasūl Allāh designation 32–33,
 107, 226
 Khārījite attitude towards 139
 and law 149, 150, 151, 152
 Shī'ite attitudes towards 132, 135
 and transcription of Qur'ān 672
- Abū Bakr ibn Bahrām al-Dimashqī 492–493,
 619, 636, 637
- Abū Bakr al-'Arabī 485
- Abū al-Barakāt al-Balafīqī (Ibn al-Hājj) 356,
 364–365, 376, 524
- Abū al-Faḍl 'Allāmī 270, 271, 272
- Abū al-Faraj al-Iṣfahānī 2, 404, 407, 447, 738,
 745–746
 on women slave musicians and poetesses
 391–392, 393
- Abul Fata* v. *Russomoy Chowdhury* (1894)
 179–180
- Abū al-Faḍl ibn Mubārak 456
- Abū al-Fidā' 449, 478–484
- Abū Firās 402
- Abū al-Ghāzī Bahādūr Khān 429–430
- Abū Ḥāmid al-Gharnāṭī 485
- Abū Ḥanīfa 165, 172, 173, 579, 588
 figurative genealogy 164, 463
 personal school 164, 165
- Abū Ḥanīfa the Younger 676
- Abū Hāshim ibn Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥanafīyya
 110
- Abū Hātim al-Rāzī (d. 322/934) 126
- Abū Ḥayyān al-Tawḥīdī 544–545
- Abū Ja'far Aḥmad ibn Yūsuf 650
- Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn 'Alī (al-Bāqir)
 111, 113
- Abū al-Jūd ibn Layth 582, 583
- Abū Kāmil al-Miṣrī 588–589
- Abū al-Khaṭṭāb al-Asadī 113
- Abū Ma'shar al-Balkhī (Albumasar) 592, 650
- Abū Mikhnaf 445
- Abū Muslim 279
- Abū Nu'aym al-Iṣfahānī 76, 466–467, 661
- Abū Nuwās 396, 397
- Abū Sahl Ismā'īl ibn Nawbakht 116, 567
- Abū Shāma 449, 471
- Abū Sulaymān al-Sijistānī al-Manṭiqī 540,
 544–545
- Abū al-Su'ūd, Muḥammad ibn Muḥyī al-Dīn
 'Imādi 262–264
- Abū Ṭāhir Sulaymān 138
- Abū Ṭālib al-Makkī 75
 descendants 109, 229
- Abū Tammām 387–388, 390
 commentaries and criticism on 388, 400,
 401, 406
- Abū Taqīyya, Ismā'īl 352–353
- Abū al-Tuqā' al-Badrī 375
- Abū 'Ubayda 446
- Abū al-'Ulā Akbarābādī, Amīr 102
- Abū 'Uthmān al-Dimashqī 539, 662–663
- Abū al-Wafā' al-Būzajānī 600–601, 627, 631
- Abū Yahyā ibn Mas'ada 389
- Abū Ya'qūb al-Sijistānī 126, 545
- Abū Yazid al-Biṣṭāmī 46, 72, 95
- Abū Yazid Makhlad ibn Kaydād 140
- Abū Yūsuf Hamdānī 95
- Abū Yūsuf Ya'qūb ibn Ibrāhīm al-Anṣārī 164,
 172, 173, 231
- Aceh 102–103, 257–258, 518
- adab* 388–389, 500, 502–503
 Andalusian 402–404
 autobiographical material in 410
 definitions 388–389, 403
 distinction 405
 education in 510, 515
 linguistic map of 405
 moral philosophy of 503
 and personal networks 404–405
 post-classical 407–408, 410–411,
 412–413
 sociology of 400–401, 412–413
 and Sufism 393, 411
 and traditional sciences 504–505
 see also Arabic poetry; grammar, Arabic;
 letter-writing; and under oral culture
- Ādāb-i salṭanat wa wizārat* 235–236
- Adam 125, 461, 468
- adhān* (call to prayer) 24–25, 704
- 'Adī ibn Zayd 397
- al-'Ādil (brother of Saladin) 359
- 'Ādil-Shāhī dynasty of Bījāpūr 122, 269
 administration
 'Abbāsīd professionalisation 229, 288
 Arabic language 385, 427, 590, 671
 caliphal power delegated to 35
 and cartography 614
 creation under early caliphate 227
 data on demography and migrations
 320–324
 literacy of system 529, 677
 literature on 272, 450, 677; administrative
 geography 445, 446, 478–479, 489–490
 local elites' role 316
 in patrimonial monarchy 236
qāḍīs' role 56, 155

Index

- Umayyad 228, 385, 590, 671
see also bureaucrats; centralisation; taxation;
and under individual states and cities
- adultery 32, 37, 145–146, 149, 377
- Afdal, Muḥammad 435–436
- al-Afdal ibn Amīr al-Juyūsh 128–129
- Afghanistan 131, 731
see also Ghaznavids; Ghūrīds
- Aflākī 467–468
- Africa
 conversion to Islam 46, 189, 192–194,
 200, 207
 East 92–93, 139, 141, 193–194
 education and scholarship 193–194, 508,
 516–518, 520, 522, 530
 geographical works on 487, 490
 magic 629
- North
 Banū Hilāl in 299, 311, 318
 caravan trade 318
 cartography 614
 Christianity 189, 200, 204, 207
 conversion to Islam 189, 200, 207
 Fāṭimid caliphate 124, 125–126, 140, 232,
 289, 573–574
 Hellenistic culture 213
 historiography 452–453
 Jews 200, 204
 Khārījism 31, 140, 229
 Latin language 213
 learning 505, 573–574
 legal sub-culture 172
 Moriscos migrate to 310
 papermills 677
riḥla (pilgrimage narrative genre) 5
 sciences in colonial period 639
 Sufism 85, 92–93, 320, 373
*see also individual states, dynasties and
 cities and Berbers; Maghrib*
- slaves in USA 472
- sub-Saharan
 conversion to Islam 192–194, 200
 cultural synthesis with Islam 218
 education and scholarship 193, 508,
 516–518, 522
 mosque architecture 704
 in Muslim world-view 476
 shifting cultivation 294
 slaves from 310, 472
 Sufism 92–93
 trade 192–194
 western 352, 508, 516–518,
 633, 704
- zār* cults 219
see also individual states and cities
- Sufism 14, 46, 92–93
- Afṭāḥiyya 114
- Aga Khan 131
- Āgāh, Mawlānā Bāqar 440
- Aghlabids 696–698
- Āgrā 721
- agriculture 290–305
 Almohad and Almoravid development 300
 Chinese writings translated 576
communauté villageoise, collective
 management 294
 competition from overseas 305
 crops: new 216, 291, 292, 293–294, 299, 301;
see also individual crops
 damaging practices 297–298
 and demography 299, 300, 324–325, 331
 intensive cultivation 290
 law and 293
 literature 216, 757; illustrated books
 576, 622
 long-term fluctuations 298–302
 manorial-type 294
 Mediterranean mode 292
 mixed farming 291, 292, 296
 Mongols' impact 286–287, 300, 316–317
 and natural environment 216, 290, 291–292,
 297
 nomads and 286–287, 295–296, 297, 299, 300,
 326–327
 plantation-type production 304
 religion and 290, 291, 292–293
 rights to produce (*'ibras*) 346, 347
 rotations 292, 299
 science 300, 501
 sharecropping 290–291, 294
 shifting cultivation 294
 specialisation 277, 303–304
 state policies and 286, 290, 295, 296, 301,
 326–327
 and topography 292
 types of undertaking 290–291
 uniformity 291–294
 variation 290, 294, 300
 vulnerabilities 296–298, 304–305
 workforce 290, 291, 294, 303–304
*see also individual crops; irrigation; land;
 soils; and under individual regions, states
 and rulers and cities; inheritance;
 money; taxation; technology; trade*
- 'ahd* of Ardashīr 227
- 'ahd 'Umar* 202–203

Index

- ahl al-bayt* (Prophet's family) 106, 107, 119, 127, 132
ahl al-dhimma 29–30, 201–208
 autonomy 205
 boundaries with Islam 204–206
 clothing 203, 204
 culture 205, 206–208
 definitions 201–202
 education 203
 enforcement of restrictions 51, 203–204
 legal status 29–30, 202–204, 205
 names 203
 occupations 188, 203, 204, 205–206, 253, 254
 practice of faiths 29–30, 203
 taxation 29–30, 203, 321
see also Christianity; Jews and Judaism; Hinduism; Zoroastrianism
ahl al-kitāb 201–202
 Aḥmad ibn Ḥanbal 43, 661, 675–676; *see also* Ḥanbalī school of law
 Aḥmad ibn Idrīs 92
 Aḥmad ibn Maḥfūz 680
 Aḥmad ibn Muḥammad ibn 'Abd al-Jalīl 583
 Aḥmad ibn al-Mu'taṣim 536
 Aḥmad ibn Sulaymān al-Mutawakkil 135
 Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn 312
 Aḥmad Bāba al-Massūfi 517
 Aḥmad al-Badawī 357–358
 Aḥmad Barēlwī, Sayyid 101
 Aḥmad the Cameleer 97
 Aḥmad al-Nāṣir li-Dīn Allāh 135
 Aḥmad Qushāshī 103
 Aḥmad Sirhindī, Shaykh 11–12, 14, 101
 Aḥmad Yasawī (or Yasevī) 95
 Aḥmed II, Ottoman sultan 432–433
 Aḥmed III, Ottoman sultan 667
 Aḥmed Resmī 483, 493
 Ahmedabad 99
 Aḥsan, Aḥsan al-Lāh 436
 'Aintab 367
 'Ā'isha bint Abī 'Abd Allāh ibn al-Maghālī 364–365
 'Ā'isha bint 'Alī 361
 Akbar, Mughal emperor
 coinage 270
 court 269, 271, 516
 and Fatehpur Sikri 281
 imperial ideology 237, 270
 and religion 101, 762–763
akhbār see under history and historiography
Akhbār al-dawla al-'Abbāsiyya 447
 Akhbārī school of Twelver Shī'ism 121–122
 al-Akḥram 127
 al-Akḥṭal 397
 'Alā' al-Dīn Muḥammad, Khwārazmshāh 625 n202, 625
 'Alā' al-Dīn Ri'āyat Shāh, al-Sayyid al-Mukammil, sultan of Aceh 257
 'Ālam, Shāh 441
 'Ālam Gujrātī 437
 Alamūt 129, 134
 'Alawīs *see* Nuṣayriyya
 Albania; Sufism 98
 Albumasar (Abū Ma'shar al-Balkhī) 592, 650
 alchemy 651–657
 Aristotelian strand 6, 651, 653
 and chemistry 654–655
 Chinese 654
 epistemology 655–656
 and Hermeticism 566, 651, 653–654, 655
 Jabirian system, *corpus Jabirianum* 6, 651, 652, 653–657
 Latin tradition 655, 656
 and magic 642–643
 and medicine 658–659, 667
 natures 649, 655, 656–657
occultum and *manifestum* 655–656, 657
 al-Rāzī and 651, 653, 654, 657, 658–659
 and Scientific Revolution 651, 657
 Shī'ism and 654, 655–656, 657
 and turning base metals into gold 654
 alcohol 39, 149, 150, 377, 761
see also wine
 Aleppo
 astronomy 635
 citadel; *maqām* of Ibrāhīm 708–709
 cotton production 304
 extra-mural suburbs 276, 279
 historiography 448, 449
Madrasat al-Firdaws 369
 Nuṣayriyya 137
 Ottoman demography 323, 324
 palaces 279
 Suhrawardī in 560
 upper-class women 360–361, 367, 369
see also Ḥamdānids; Zangids
 Alexander the Great, king of Macedon 6, 258, 385, 480, 738
 conquests 213, 479, 480
 Sasanian propaganda on 567, 568
 Alexander of Aphrodisias 539, 547, 558
 Alexandria, Egypt 330, 340, 571, 658
 Muslim conquest 685
 philosophy 545–546, 547, 551, 571
 algebra 501, 578–579, 580–581, 588–589

Index

- Algiers 367, 749
 ‘Alī, Muṣṭafā ibn Aḥmad Ḥelebī (‘Ālī Pāsha) 263
 ‘Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib 106–108
 accession to caliphate 106–108, 113, 225–226
 civil war and death 30, 108, 139
 and grammar 462
 and imamate 226
 Khārijite attitude towards 139, 228
 and Muḥammad 107, 113
 Ṣafavid claim to descent from 120, 262
 Shī‘ite beliefs on 31, 98, 99, 106–108, 119, 226; Nuṣayrī 138; Zaydī 132
 ‘Alī ibn al-Ḥusayn 111
 ‘Alī ibn Khalaf 596
 ‘Alī ibn Mūsā al-Kāẓim *see* ‘Alī al-Riḍā
 ‘Alī ibn Muskūya *see* Miskawayh
 ‘Alī ibn Sahl al-Ṭabarī 570
 ‘Alī ‘Ādil Shāh II 439, 440
 ‘Alī ‘Ādil Shāh Shāhī 439
 ‘Alī Akbar (or Ekber) 486, 492
 Ali Macar Reis 619
 ‘Ālī Pāsha (Muṣṭafā ibn Aḥmad Ḥelebī ‘Alī) 263
 ‘Alī al-Riḍā 114, 120, 229, 469, 720
 ‘Alī al-Shāmī 455
 ‘Alids
 and ‘Abbāsids 131, 229
 and imamate 32, 109, 113, 132, 226, 229
 Ṣafavid fabrication of descent from 120, 262
 Shī‘ism and 31, 32
 Zaydis and 132
 see also individual family members
 Allāh
 as creator 20, 29
 see also God
 Allahabad 443
 ‘Allāma al-Ḥillī (al-Ḥasan ibn Yūsuf Ibn al-Muṭahhar al-Ḥillī) 118, 249, 265
 allergies 659
 Almohads 238–239, 282, 310, 311, 370, 630
 agriculture under 300
 Islamic militancy 50, 189, 200, 207, 282
 Almoravids 50, 238–239, 282, 360
 agriculture under 300
 Berber troops 283, 289, 310
 alms-tax (*zakāt*) 27, 28, 29, 144
 Alp Arslān 288, 313
 alphabets *see* letter magic; scripts
 Alpharabius *see* al-Fārābī, Abū Naṣr
 Amasya region 93
 Americas 301, 305, 476, 477, 489
 amicable numbers 581, 631–633
 al-Āmidī 388, 406
 ‘Āmil, Jabal 119, 120
 al-‘Āmilī, Bahā’ al-Dīn 411
 al-‘Āmilī, Shaykh ‘Alī al-Karakī (Muḥaqqiq al-Thānī) 120
 Amīn al-Dīn ‘Alī A’lā 439
 Amīn Gujrātī 437
 al-Āmir (Fātimid caliph) 129
 Amir Hamza, *The adventures of* 522
 Amīr Khusraw 422
 amīr al-mu‘minīn 226
 al-‘Āmirī al-Nīshābūrī, Abū al-Ḥasan 236, 237, 543–544, 562
 Amman, Mīr 443
 Ammonius 547, 551
 Amorium, battle of 387–388
 amṣār (sing. *mīṣr*, garrison towns) 148–150, 228, 275–276, 445
 architecture 275–276, 279
 daily life 213
 law and society 148–150, 309
 mosques 148, 276, 687
 tribal groupings 275, 276, 285
 Āmul 133
 amulets 57, 193, 630–631, 633
 analogy (*qiyās*) 39, 157, 158
 Anatolia
 agriculture 299, 324–325, 331
 cartography of coast 614–615
 conversion to Islam 48, 198, 201, 314
 crafts 730, 731
 Ḥanafī rite 263
 literary culture 422, 427–429
 migrations and settlement 288, 299, 322–323, 326–327, 331, 427–428
 Ottoman tax data 320, 321, 324–325
 plagues 330
 population and food resources 324–325
 Shī‘ism 3, 119
 Sufism 93–95, 96, 97–99, 119, 260, 320, 427–428
 trade 314
 Turkish regimes 48, 313–314, 428
 women’s properties in 367
 anatomy 658, 662, 665–666
 al-Andalus
 adab 402–404
 agriculture 290–291, 300
 Almohad rule 50, 189, 200, 204, 207, 282
 Almoravid rule 50, 289
 Arabic language 189, 310
 astrology 591–592

Index

- al-Andalus (cont.)
 astronomy 591–592, 596, 601–603, 609–610
 cartography 614
 Christians: under Islamic rule 50, 186, 189,
 200, 204, 207; *reconquista* 10, 45, 48–49,
 50, 310, 477
 conversion to Islam 49, 186, 187, 188–189,
 190, 200
 cooking 758
 elementary school curriculum 521
 historiography 447, 452–453
 Jews 49, 50, 200, 204, 206–207, 755; expulsion
 49, 310, 322, 432
karāmāt performed by military leaders 629
 land holdings 290–291
 law and justice 159, 172
 medicine 634–635, 663
 migrations into 309–310
 Moriscos 310, 482
 music 394, 748–749
 papermills 677
 philosophy 553–560
 plague 330
 poetry 373, 394
 political organisation and theory 238–239
 Prophetic *sīra* written in 469
riḥla (pilgrimage narrative) 5
shu‘ūbiyya 389
 slavery 310, 749
 Sufism 320, 559–560
ṭā’ifa kingdoms 10, 238, 310
 trade 318
 women’s education 371–372, 373
see also Cordoba, Umayyad caliphate of;
 Granada
- And-Argh-Muḥammad lineage of Timbuktu
 516
- angels 643
- Anglo-Muhammadan law 179–182
- animals
 in art 623, 625–627
 pack 274
see also camels; horses; livestock; nomads
 (pastoralism); sheep
- animism 92
- ‘Annāzid state 284
- anṣār* (‘helpers’) 28, 31
- al-Anṣārī al-Harawī, ‘Abd Allāh 76, 416
- Anṣāriyya, Jabal 137
- al-Anṭākī, Dā‘ūd 411
- Antalya 428
- anthologies 2, 10, 387, 404–405
- Antioch 546, 685
- Anūshīrwān, Sasanian ruler 239, 756
- apocalyptic literature 228, 359, 379, 655
- Apollonius of Perga 579–580, 582, 583, 586
- Apollonius of Tyana *see* Balinās
- apologetic, Islamic 42, 73–74, 76, 185
- apostasy 28–29, 193
 allowed after forcible conversion 200, 201
 as capital offence 188, 204–205
- Aq Qoyunlu dynasty of Azerbaijan 119
- Aq Shams al-Dīn 97
- Āqā Muḥammad Khān 268
- Aqīt lineage of Timbuktu 516
- al-‘Aqr (Nizwā); al-Shawādhina mosque
 708, 709
- ‘Arab Aṭā’, tomb of 718
- arabesques 3, 6
- Arabic language
 and *adab* 405
 Christians’ use 189, 205, 208
 colloquial 412, 452, 674–675
 and conversion to Islam 184, 185,
 208, 424
 dialects 668–669, 671, 675
 Jewish forms 205, 206, 675 n24
 Middle Arabic 412, 674–675
 modern literary, formation of 484
 Modern Standard Arabic (*fuṣḥā*) 668–669
 Persian language influenced by 414
 Saljūq state language 427
 scholarly use 4
 as unifying force 292–293, 530, 671
 Urdu influenced by 438, 443
 verbal roots 668
 written and spoken languages 668–669,
 675
see also grammar, Arabic; scripts (Arabic);
 terminology, Arabic; translation
 movement; *and* Arabic language *or*
 Arabisation *under individual regions and*
under administration; Qur’ān
- Arabic literature 4–5, 383–413
 classical ideal 384
 colloquialism 412, 452
 cultural exchange and nostalgia 386–389,
 390
 influence *see under* Persian literature
 Turkish literature
kuttāb as authors 384–386
 marginal figures 395–400
mawālī authors 384–386, 388
 medieval period 412–413
 patronage 389–391
 and politics 386, 387, 389–391, 401–404

Index

- post-classical period 406–413
 women slave musicians and poetesses
 391–394
see also individual authors and genres and
 literary culture; oral culture; popular
 culture
- Arabic poetry
 in al-Andalus 373, 394
 and Arab identity 213
 and aristocratic conduct 2
 autobiographical material in 408
 Bedouin verse 387
 ceremonial verse 387
 comic verse 412
 at court 390–391, 417–418
 criticism (*naqd al-shiʿr*) 388
 homosexual themes 396
 love poetry *see ghazal*
mawālī stylists 388
muḥdathūn ('moderns') 386
 natural world in 212–213
 non-narrativity 409
 occasional verse 408–409, 412; patronage
 387, 390–391
 pre-Islamic 4, 7, 383–384, 669; commentary
 on 37, 406; by Jews and Christians
 386–387; language 386–387, 671; natural
 world in 212–213; oral nature 669; and
 tribal culture 383–384, 387, 388, 391,
 444; women poets 391
 and prose; similar features 409
 satirical 7, 357, 376, 387
Sīrat Baybars contains classical 680
 women poets 373, 391–394, 442
 women's knowledge of 371–372
see also fakhr; ghazal; hijāʿ; maḏīḥ; maqāma;
metres, poetic; muwashshah; qaṣīda;
rawḏiyyāt; waṣf; zajal; and under love
 in literature; Sufism; wine
- Arabs and Arabia
 Christians 21, 205, 395
 clothing 214
 cooking 751–752, 762
 early Islamic period 20–29
 folklore 402, 444, 445
 folk medicine 659–660
 food shortages 751–752
 Islam identified with 4, 27–29
 Khārijism 31, 140, 141
 market buildings 282
 mathematics 581
 metrology 349 n68
 migrations 308–309, 310, 311
- Muḥammad's unification 27, 225
 poetry and identity 213
 post-conquest feminised culture 391–392
 pre-Islamic period: art and architecture
 683–685; calendar and folk astronomy
 589–590; government 23; idealisation
 389, 444; inheritance 578; inscriptions
 444, 669–670; *jāhiliyya* culture 7; al-
 Kindī and knowledge from 573;
 mathematics 578; orality and literacy
 669–670; primary sources 444;
 religions 20–21, 22, 27, 138, 213–214;
 slave musicians 391–392; society 147,
 285, 383–384;
 see also Arabic poetry (pre-Islamic);
 folk culture, Arabian; tribal society,
 Arab
ridda wars 28–29
 urbanisation 213, 275
 Wahhabism 14
see also Baḥrayn; Bedouin; Ḥijāz; tribal
 society, Arab; Yemen; *and under*
 Umayyads
- Aramaic elite 568
 Aramaic language 213
 arbitration 139, 148, 287, 364
 by *qāḏīs* 149, 161
 by Sufi leaders and saints 88, 90
 archaeology, nautical 353–354
 archers, mounted 288–289
 Archimedes 580, 582, 583, 586
 architecture 682–742
 commemorative 693; *see also* mausolea;
 tombs
 commercial 275–276; *see also* markets (urban)
 decoration 3, 625–626, 690, 693, 702, 715; *see*
 also inscriptions (architectural);
 ornament
 diversity and innovation 682
 Ḥijāzī style 705
 ideological use 686
 local influences 682, 697–702, 704, 705–708
 and mathematics 627–629
 plans and drawings 614, 619, 625, 628–629
 spolia from temples used in 724
see also cities (fabric; planning); complexes,
 architectural; domes; inscriptions
 (architectural); *iwāns*; markets
 (urban); mausolea; *miḥrābs*; minarets;
 mosaics; mosques; *muqarnas* vaulting;
 ornament; palaces; squinches; victory;
and under individual places, regions and
states

Index

- Ardashīr I, Sasanian ruler 234
‘*ahd*’ 227
- Ardistān; Great Mosque 700, 700,
712, 718
- Arezzo; church of San Francesco 1
- ‘Arīb al-Qurtūbī 447
- aristocratic culture 1–2
see also courts, royal and imperial
- Aristotle and Aristotelianism
- astrology legitimised through 592
- Brethren of Purity and 6
- commentaries on 6, 539, 556, 558–559
- epistemology 658
- Ethics* 248
- four qualities 656
- Ibn Bājja’s interest in 553–554
- Ibn al-Muqaffa’ as possible transmitter 386
- and Judaism 559
- literary fantasies about 6
- on logic 501
- and magic 648–649
- al-Ma’mūn’s dream of 569
- and mechanics 586
- and Plotinus 537
- al-Shīrāzī’s critique of 607–608
- Themistius’ *Paraphrase of De anima* 539
- translations 536, 538, 539–540, 568
- see also under* alchemy; astronomy;
al-Fārābī; Ibn Rushd; Ibn Sīnā; al-Kindī;
medicine
- Aristotle, Pseudo-
advice to Alexander 385
Problemata mechanica 586, 747
Secreta secretorum 6, 649–650
- arithmetic 165, 501, 523, 580–581, 588–589
- Armenia 11, 277, 432
conversion to Islam 199 n35, 201
- languages and writing 429, 432
- armies
‘Abbāsīd professionalisation 229, 288, 311–312
- Alp Arslān’s professional 288
- cities as bases 276–277, 280
- gunpowder weapons 289
- land grants in Baghdad 278
- al-Ma’mūn’s reforms 570
- mawālī* admitted to 229
- nomads’ role 283, 284, 287, 288–289, 314
- pay 275
- tribal contingents 228, 229, 275, 309
- see also* artillery; cavalry; slaves and slavery
(military and palace elite); *and under*
Mongols; Ottoman empire; Ṣafavid
empire; Saljūqs
- armillary spheres 596
- Arsenal, Ottoman 638
- Arslān Jādhīb 720
- art and craft, Islamic 682–742
absence of high art/craft distinction 682
- attitudes to 686
- background to genesis 683–685
- cartography and 613, 625; *see also* maps
under metalwork; textiles; tiles
- coin designs 688–690, 693
- commemorative 719–723
- defined 2–3, 682–683
- domestic and rural crafts 303, 371, 726–727,
734, 739–742
- external influences 693, 723–726; Coptic and
Syriac 620–621; Graeco-Roman 6,
723; *see also* Persian art and
architecture *and under* Byzantium;
China; Europe
- figurative *see separate entry*
- formative period, first/seventh century
685–693
- gardens in 1
- ideological use 686
- International Timūrid style 4
- migration of artists 319–320, 327–329, 729,
731–732
- modern period 14–16
- night scenes 1
- Ottoman state control 703
- paper as aid to development 9
- urban 726–733
- see also* architecture; ceramics; craftsmen;
figurative art; inscriptions;
manuscripts; metalwork; miniature
painting; mosaics; ornament; painting;
sculpture; textiles; *and under individual
regions and states, and* nomads; palaces;
Qur’ān; sciences
- artillery 289, 315
- artisans *see* craftsmen
- Artuqīds
arts 6, 621 n182, 625–626
- coinage 6
- and magic 630
- ‘*arūḍ*’ (metre) 414, 425, 426, 428
- Arwā, queen of Yemen 360
- Ārzū, Sirāj al-Dīn ‘Alī Khān 436
- ‘*aṣabiyya*’ (‘group consciousness’) 452
- Ascension of Prophet *see* *mi‘rāj*
- asceticism
Christian 46
- Islamic 45–46, 60, 64, 67–68, 102

Index

- al-A'shā Maymūn 397
al-Ash'arī, Abū al-Ḥasan 43–44,
534–535
Ash'arism 43–44, 406, 533, 534–535, 552
Fakhr al-Dīn al-Rāzī 44, 535, 561
al-Ijī 535, 561–562
'Aṣīq Paşa 428
Ashraf Khalīl, Mamlūk sultan 451
'Āshūrā', day of 25, 108
Asia, Central
cartography and geography 490, 614
and China 4, 311, 481
collectives, village 294
colonial period 639
conversion to Islam 187, 192, 198–199, 424
education 424, 429, 514, 664
illustrated manuscripts 622
Indian translation of scholarship 516
in Islamic world-view 476
literary culture 427, 429–430
magic 629
medicine 663
music 744
nomads 283–284, 742
papermaking 677
Qarāmiṭa 128
sciences 504, 514, 574, 622, 639, 664
Shī'ism 118–119, 128, 130, 131
Sufism 12, 85, 95, 104, 119, 520
textile production 742
trade, long-distance 6
see also individual states, areas, dynasties and places
Asia, South 46, 130, 529–530, 531
see also individual states, areas and places
Asia, South-East
coffee production 305
conversion to Islam 192, 196–198, 200
culture 218, 529–530
education 518, 529–530
magic-medicinal bowls 631
reform movement, nineteenth-century 14
Sufism 5, 12
see also individual states, areas and places
al-'Askarī, Abū Hilāl 503
'askerī estate 259–260
al-Aṣma'ī 675
Asma'u, Nana 527–528, 529, 530
Assassins 49, 130
Astarābādī, Faḍl Allāh 118
Astarābādī, Muḥammad Bāqir (Mīr Dāmād)
121, 562–563
Astarābādī, Mullā Muḥammad Amīn 121–122
al-Astarābādī, Raḍī al-Dīn 411
astrolabes 595–596, 597, 602, 617
astrology 589–613
Baghdad founded in accordance with 591
court astrologers 456, 574–575, 634, 635
dynasties favourable to 575, 629–630
al-Ghazālī and 645
Hellenistic 214, 218
illustrated books on 622–623
loss of intellectual prestige 612
manuscripts 577–578
and medicine; disease aetiology 612
and Mongols' political legitimisation 250
Neopythagorean interest in Harrān 539
and religious scholarship 612–613
Sabians' mathematical 566
translation movement and 566
woman astrologer, Bija Munajjima
528–529
see also under al-Andalus; astronomy; India; magic; Ottoman empire
astronomy 4, 215, 501, 589–613
and 'Abbāsīd *dawla* 229
Aristotelian 604, 605–606
and astrology 589, 591–593, 603
Babylonian 604–605
Banū Mūsā patrons of 573
Chaldaean 213
and decorative arts 625–626
Greek tradition 215, 218, 580, 589–590 *see also under Ptolemy*
Indian tradition 590–591
and Islam 592, 593–596, 610–613; *qibla*
determination 593–594; religious time-keeping 592, 594–595
Latin texts 592
lunar crescent observation 595
manuscripts 577, 578, 622
and natural philosophy 601, 603
ninth- to eleventh-century 599–603
obliquity of ecliptic 602–603
observations 598, 600–601, 602, 606–610
and optics 584
origins 589–592
pre-Islamic Arabian folk 589–590
prestige 589
Ptolemaic *see relevant material under Ptolemy*
solar apogee 598, 599, 600,
601–602
tables 502, 587, 590–592
translations 215, 539, 579, 590–591, 597, 598
woman astronomer, Bija Munajjima 528–529

Index

- see also *muwaqqits*; *zījes*; and *under* Aleppo;
 al-Andalus; al-Bīrūnī; cartography;
 instruments, scientific; Mamlūk
 sultanate; Ottoman empire; Persia;
 Šafavid empire (sciences); Samarqand
 (rational sciences); Thābit ibn Qurra;
 al-Ṭūsī, Našīr al-Dīn
- Aswān 720
 ‘aṭā’ (military pay) 275
 atabeg, atābak (tutors) 238, 253
 Atcheh *see* Aceh
 Athens; Tzisdarakī mosque 703, 703
 Athīr al-Dīn Abū Ḥayyān 452
 ‘Aṭīf Efendi 638
 Atjeh *see* Aceh
 atlases 613, 617
 ‘atlas of Islam’ 479–480
 al-Atfīdī (or al-Itfīdī) 402
 atomism, ontological 334
 ‘Aṭṭār, Farīd al-Dīn 79, 420, 467
 attributes, divine (*ṣifāt*) 42, 43
 Augsburg instrument makers 639
 Augustine of Hippo 603
 Aurangzeb, Mughal emperor 269, 270, 272,
 516, 666–667
- authority
 accounts of non-Muslim world lack 474,
 485–486, 487, 494
 religion and political 23, 29
 right of resistance to unjust 16
 statement of (*‘ilm*) 153–154
 to transmit *see under* scholarship
see also kingship and *under* caliphate;
 genealogy (figurative and intellectual);
ḥadīth; imamate; law and
 jurisprudence; law, schools of; oral
 culture; Muḥammad, the Prophet;
 Persian political theory; ‘*ulamā*’
- autobiography 408, 410, 412, 470–472
 modern: African Muslim in USA 472;
 spontaneous oral production 472–473
 spiritual 77, 471
see also under Bābur; Ibn Sīnā
- autocracy *see* absolutism
 automata 735–736
 autopsy 485–486
 ‘*avāriḍ*’ (form of tax) 321
 Averroes *see* Ibn Rushd
 Avesta 567, 568
 Avicenna *see* Ibn Sīnā
 Awadh 122, 516
 ‘Awāna ibn al-Ḥakam 445
 ‘Awfī, Sadīd al-Dīn Muḥammad 247
- awlād al-nās* 450–451
awliyā’ 68, 71, 86–90
 Awrangzēb *see* Aurangzeb
 Awzā’ī 164
 a‘yān–amīr system 237–238
 Aybak, al-Mu‘izz 357
 ‘Aydarūsiyya 99
 ‘Ayn Jālūt, battle of 251
 ‘Ayn al-šan’a wa ‘awn al-šana’a 653, 654
 al-‘Aynī, Badr al-Dīn 450
 ayyām al-‘arab 444
 Ayyūb al-Bašrī 579
 Ayyūbids 10, 300, 631
 historiography and biography 448–449,
 469, 471
see also individual rulers
- ‘Ayyuqī 419
 Azāriqa 140
 al-Azdī 447
 Azerbaijan
 Azerī poetry 428, 430
 literary language 426, 429, 430
 Marāgha Observatory 606–609
 Šafawiyya 119
 transhumants 284–285
- al-Azhar 673–674
 al-‘Azīz, Fāṭimid caliph 736
 al-Azraq, ‘Abd al-Raḥmān 661–662
 al-Azraqī 376
- Bābā Ilyās 97–98
 Bābā Ishāq 97–98
 Bābāgān faction of Bektāshīyya 98
bābās (itinerant preachers) 97–98
 Bābur, Mughal emperor 101, 269–270
 autobiography 427, 456, 471–472, 487
 Babylonia, ancient 579, 604–605, 755
 Badajoz 280
 Badakhshān 126
badī’ 386
 Badr al-Dīn, *shaykh*, of Samarqand 100
 Baghdad 30, 218, 277–278
 astronomy 598
 building of 277–278, 591, 627
 Būyid period 35; culture 396, 408, 574
 historiography 447
 hospitals 662
 Jewish cultural centre 206–207
 Karkh quarter 137
 al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī on 65, 68–73, 464
 library 678
madrasas 511; Mustanširiyya 664; Niẓāmiyya
 76–77, 511

Index

- al-Mahdiyya quarter 278
 al-Ma'mūn's return to 570
 military cantonments 278
 Mongol conquest 30, 49
 mosques 278
 Mu'tazila 116–117, 121, 135
 palace 278
 papermills 677, 724
 philosophy 540, 544, 546
 popular preacher in 525
 population 278
 Qur'ān manuscripts 716
 Round City 278
 in Sāmarrā' period 278
 scholarly networks centred on 508,
 544–545
 Sufism 65, 68–73, 85
 theological school of 116–117, 121, 122,
 135, 533
 toyshop 521
 traditionists 65, 68–73
 translation movement 538
 urban planning 278
- al-Baghdādī, Abū Manṣūr 'Abd al-Qāhir ibn
 Ṭāhir al-Nisābūrī 242–243, 580
- al-Baghdādī, Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan
 755 111, 761
- Bahā' al-Dīn Zakariyyā' 100
- Bahlūl Gwāliyārī, Shaykh 101
- Bahmanid kingdom 122, 439
- Baḥrayn, medieval province of 120, 124
 Qarmaṭī state 117, 124, 128
- Bahshal 447
- Bājan, Shaykh Bahā' al-Dīn 437, 438
- al-Bākharzī 405, 410
- Bakhtīshū' (Bukhtīshū') family 395, 396, 574
- Bākī 430
- baking 752, 757–758
- bakkā'ūn* ('weepers'; early ascetics) 64
- Bakrān, Muḥammad ibn Najīb 625 n202, 625
- al-Bakrī, Abū 'Ubayd 489–490
- al-Bakrī, Muṣṭafā Kamāl al-Dīn, and
 al-Bakriyya 94
- al-Balādhurī 446
- Bal'amī 414, 454
- Bālim Sulṭān 98
- Balīnās (Apollonius of Tyana) 659
 Pseudo- 650, 653–654
- Balkans
 agriculture and rural society 294
 nomad settlement 326
 Ottoman tax registers 320, 321, 322
 religion 48, 97, 322
- Balkh 576, 703
 school of geography 479–480, 619
- al-Balkhī, Abū Zayd 479, 543, 615
- bananas 293–294, 299, 305
- Banaras 443
- Banda islands 257
- Banten 257
- Baptistère de Saint Louis 729
- al-Bāqir (Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn 'Alī)
 111, 113
baraka (spiritual power) 57, 195, 484
- Baraka Khān, Mamlūk sultan 361
- Baranī, Ḍiyā' al-Dīn 247, 456
- barbarism 481
- Barcelona 304, 309
- Bardesanes 568–569
- barley 752, 757, 760
- Barmakids 569–570, 572, 579
- Baroda 443
- Baronian, Petros 636
- Barqūq, Mamlūk sultan 338–339
- Barsbāy, Mamlūk sultan 4–5, 304, 359
- barter 340
- Bashshār ibn Burd 386, 387, 388, 390, 391,
 392, 407
- basin, inlaid brass, of al-Nāṣir Muḥammad ibn
 Qalāwūn 712, 714, 719, 726
- basketry 739
- Bašra 213, 298, 304, 445
 foundation as garrison 148, 228, 275, 279,
 298, 309
kalām 533, 534
 Khārījism 140
 mosque 687
 Sufis and piety 65, 68, 75
- Bass, George 353–354
- Bastām 720
- al-Baṭā'ihī, al-Ma'mūn 404
- bathhouses
 Bihzād's image of Hārūn al-Rashīd in
 739, 740
 public 5, 276, 306, 702; women's visits
 357, 363
 Umayyad palatial 733
- bāṭin* / *zāhir* (esoteric / exoteric) distinction 125
- Bāṭiniyya, Ismā'īlīs known as 126
- Batriyya 132
- Baṭṭāl, popular epics of 7, 680
- al-Battānī 591, 602
- bay'a* (oath of allegiance) 31, 240
- Bāyazīd I, Ottoman sultan 633
- Bāyazīd II, Ottoman sultan 93, 259, 432, 482, 750
 and Sufism 93, 98

Index

- Baybars I al-Zāhir, Mamlūk sultan 251–252
 and ‘Abbāsīd caliphate 49, 56, 251–252
 accounts of 449, 451, 469; popular 7, 680
 Islamic policy 137–138, 251–252
 and prostitution 371
 tomb 512
- Baybars II al-Jāshnikir, Mamlūk sultan
 712, 713
- Baybars al-Manṣūrī II, 449
- Bayḍāwī, ‘Abd Allāh 518
- Bayhaq 455
- Bayhaqī, Abū al-Faḍl 234, 415, 454
- Bāyqarā, Sultan Ḥusayn, Tīmūrid ruler 81, 512
- Bayram, Ḥājjī 96
- Bayramiyya 96–97
- Bayt al-Hikma* 8–9, 569, 746
- bazm* genre of lyric poetry 440
- Bedouin 148, 283–284, 289, 388
see also Arabic poetry (pre-Islamic);
 nomads; tribal society, Arab
- Bedr al-Dīn of Simavna 320
- beef 759, 762–763
- beer 39
- begliks*, Turkish 428
- Bektāsh, Ḥājjī 97–98, 99, 427–428
- Bektāshīyya 97–99, 118, 427–428
- bendahara* (Melakan official) 255–256
- Bengal 100, 177, 194, 195
- Berbers
 and Almoravids and Almohads 50, 289
 in al-Andalus 310
 cooking 755, 762
 histories of 452
 Islam 124, 140, 186, 187, 188, 192
 Kutāma 124, 289
 language 213
 mercenaries 289
 rebellions 91, 187, 229
 Sanḥāja 282, 289
 sedentarisation 298
- Berke Khān 198
- bevelled style 715
- Bhūva Khavāṣṣkhān 666
- Bible 21, 22, 445
- bid’a* *see* innovation
- Bidpāi*, *Fables of* 415
- Bihar 99, 100
- Bihbahānī, Muḥammad Bāqir 122
- Bihzād, Kamāl al-Dīn 728, 739, 740
- Bija Munajjima 528–529
- Bijāpūr 122, 269, 277
- Bilāl 704
- bills of sale 340
- bimāristāns* 701
see also hospitals *and under* Damascus
- Bindrāban Mathrāvī 441
- biography 458–473
 annalistic form 450
 centennial dictionaries 464
 characterisation of subjects 465–466
 ‘charter myths’ 463–464, 466–467
 collective 511
 discussions of biography itself in 464
 documentary element 459, 460
 dynastic chronicle-cum-royal biography
 genre 448–449, 451, 456
 expansion and development of material
 467–468
 form and content of entry 458, 464–466
 genealogies 461–465; figurative 460, 461–464;
 of Muḥammad 461, 468; revisionism
 463–464; tribal 461, 472–473
 general dictionaries 464
 idealisation of subject 469–470
 by *kuttāb* 446
 of law schools 460, 463, 469
 miracle stories 467
 names: as capsule biographies 461; as
 evidence of conversion 189–192
 nature of accounts 458, 459–461
 oral production, spontaneous 472–473
 Persian 459, 467–468
 on pupil–teacher relationship 505, 506
 readerly pleasure 460–461
 Shī’ite 117, 463
sīra 231, 458–459, 461, 468–470; *see also*
 Muḥammad, the Prophet (biography)
- Sufi 76, 79, 81, 463, 466–467
- ṭā’ifa*, on single class 462–464, 466–467
- terms 458–460
- town-based collections 460, 464
- Turkish 431, 432, 459
- of ‘*ulamā*’ 447, 464–465
- of women scholars 372, 528
see also autobiography; *tarjama*
- al-Biqā’ī, Ibrāhīm ibn ‘Umar 411
- birds, dietary laws on 753
- birth control 308, 365–366, 376
- al-Bīrūnī, Abū al-Rayhān ibn Aḥmad 9,
 600–601, 616
 astronomy 480, 600–601, 603
 manuscript of *Chronologies of ancient nations*
 721–722, 722, 726
- al-Birzālī 451
- Bishāpūr *see* Bijāpūr
- Bishr ibn Abī Khāzīm 383–384

Index

- Bishr ibn al-Hārith (al-Hāfi) 68, 467
 al-Biṣṭāmī, ‘Abd al-Raḥmān 629
 al-Biṭrūjī 609–610
 Blacas ewer 732
 Black Death 300, 307, 346
 Black Sea region 315, 327, 331
 Black Stone 128
 Blaeu, Willem Janszoon and Joan 492–493, 636, 637
 blindness and orality 407
 blood, pulmonary circulation of 665
 boasting (*fakhr*) poetic genre 7
 Bobrinski bucket 732
 body, human
 cultural attitudes to 214, 661
 dissection 665
 integrity of body and soul 661
 and representation of cosmos 626
 Boerhaave, Herman 667
 Bohras (Ṭayyibī Ismā‘īlīs) 129
 Bolad Ch’eng-Hsiang 491, 576
 books
 authorisation for transmission 506–507
 destruction of Nuṣayrī by Mamlūks 138
 oral publication 506–507
 trade 401, 517
 see also manuscripts; miniature painting
 booty 35, 148
 border disputes, maps for regulating 614
 Borsch, S. J. 346, 347
 Bosnia 48, 97
 botany 215, 638, 664
 illustrations 623, 721
 Boulliau, Ismaël 635
 boundaries with non-Muslim world 475–477
 bowls, magic-medicinal 576, 630–631
 Boyle, Robert 655, 657
 Brahe, Tycho 635
 Brahmagupta 591
 Brahmin script 424
 Braj Bhāshā dialect 438
 bread 340, 752, 754, 757
 Brethren of Purity see *Ikhwān al-Ṣafā’*
 bridges, transhumants’ building of 284
 Britain 174, 187, 483–484
 see also India (British rule)
 Brown, Edward 679
 Bū Sa‘īd, Āl 141
 Buddhism 12, 46, 424
 al-Buḥṭurī 387, 400–401
 Bukhārā 12, 14
 arts and learning 416, 424, 663
 Sāmānid mausoleum 720
 al-Bukhārī, Muḥammad ibn Ismā‘īl 4–5, 38, 500, 675–676
 Bukhtīshū‘ family 395, 396, 574
 Bulgars of Volga 481
 bulghur wheat, *burghul* 762
 Bulliet, Richard 189–192, 276
 bullion 345
 Bulqīnī family of Damascus 528
 al-Būnī, Aḥmad 629
 bureaucrats
 education 397, 484, 515, 516, 590
 literary culture 384–386, 400, 446, 478–479, 484, 489–490, 677; geography 478–479, 489–490; historiography 446, 448–449, 450–451, 452
 Mughal 271, 516
 Ottoman 93, 365, 484, 515, 634, 635
 and sciences 572, 590, 634, 635
 religious allegiances: *ahl al-dhimma* 204, 205, 253, 254; *mawālī* 228, 384–386, 566; non-Islamic 568–569; Sufism 93
 shu‘ūbiyya 389–390
 tax exemption 321
 see also administration; viziers
burghul (bulghur wheat) 762
 Burhān I Nizām-Shāh 122
 Burhān al-Dīn Jānam, Shāh 438
 Bursa 363, 365, 368, 371
 business arithmetic 501
Būstān al-salāṭīn 257–258
 Būyids 48, 233, 663
 and ‘Abbāsids 241, 388, 574
 of Baghdad 35, 396, 408, 574
 historiography 447, 453–454
 iqṭā’ system 301
 and Mu‘tazila 115–116
 patronage of learning 408, 574, 614, 678
 and Shī‘ism 47–48, 115–116, 117, 241, 574
 Buzurgmihr 234
 Byzantium
 art and architecture 685, 702, 714–715, 716, 723; influence on Dome of the Rock 691–692, 693, 719
 coinage 688, 689
 Comnene emperors 313
 financial collapse 283
 frontier with Islam 479
 Ibn Khurrādādhbih as source on 478–479
 iconoclasm 42
 al-Ma‘mūn’s anti-Byzantinism 570–571
 manuscripts 579, 621 n182, 723; illustrated scientific 576, 620
 Orthodox Christianity 21, 566

Index

- Byzantium (cont.)
trade 318
and Umayyads of Spain 574, 723
wars with Islamic world 19, 65, 387–388, 566;
Saljūq 48, 299, 313, 314; Sufi participants
46, 61
- cadastral surveys 260, 345, 346, 347
Ca'fer Efendi 627
Cahen, Claude 333, 335, 339
Cairo 218, 279
‘Abbāsīd rump caliphate 49, 56, 246, 251,
253–254
adultery case 377
ahl al-dhimma 50, 204, 206–207
ceramics 729, 730
citadel 280
Dār al-‘Ilm 9–10
Druzes 127
education 9–10, 508, 514–515, 522, 526, 529;
popular 524; women’s 527; see also
madrasas below
as Fāṭimid capital 126, 279
funerary monuments 369, 512, 701–702, 720,
726
Geniza documents 205–206, 317–318, 337,
343, 352, 675 n24; on long-distance trade
317–318, 353
historiography 448–449, 451
hospital 577
Imām Shāfi‘ī mausoleum 720
Jews 50, 206–207; see also Geniza
documents above
law schools 252
madrasas 10–11, 53, 55, 511, 513, 524;
Manṣūriyya 577; medical 577;
patronage by women 369, 526, 527;
students’ provenance 508
Maimonides in 50
as Mamlūk capital 279, 280
Mansa Mūsā’s visit 345
marriage contracts 363
migration to 320, 508, 729
mint 345
miṣr of Fustāt 148, 213, 228, 275, 279
mosques 577; al-Azhar 279, 518; Sayyida
Ruqayya 708–709
al-Nāṣir al-Ḥasan mausoleum complex 512,
701–702, 726
plagues 329
popular entertainments 499, 679, 680
al-Qarāfa cemetery 357
reading for relaxation 412
rock-crystal carving 736–737, 737
Sufism 10–11, 55, 369, 373–374
tolerant society, twelfth-century 50
trade 317–318, 353, 639
‘*ulamā*’ 55, 499
walls 280
women 357, 368, 369, 373–374, 526, 527, 528
calculation, science of (*‘ilm al-ḥisāb*) 501, 581
Calcutta 443, 516
calendars
Coptic 340
of Córdoba 592
Hellenistic 218
Islamic 590, 595
pre-Islamic Arabian 589–590
Turko-Chinese duodecimal 625–626
caliphate 32–35
absolutism 162, 229, 233, 570
authority 32–35; circumscription 30, 33–34,
35, 246, 299, 312, 402; Khārijites and 31,
105, 139, 228; sources of legal 151
designations used 226; *khalīfat Allāh* 32–33,
226, 229; *khalīfat rasūl Allāh* 32–33, 107,
226
establishment 106–107, 226
first fitna and 108, 226
and imamate 32, 34, 105, 240–245
investiture of dynasts 35, 241
khuṭba in name of 44, 229, 233
and kingship 233–240, 243
law on 233, 240–245, 254
legal role 32, 34, 35
religious duties 32, 34, 35, 44
selection and succession 30–32, 106–108, 240,
243, 463; see also *al-riḍā*
Shī‘ite attitudes to early 110, 111, 132, 135, 136
Sunnī endorsement of historical 105
title used by: Mughal emperors 270;
Ottoman sultans 56
see also under Khārijism; *qāḍīs*; Quraysh;
sultanate; ‘*ulamā*’
calligraphy 2, 371–372, 432, 623, 682
high status 690, 692–693, 728
Mamlūk Qur’āns 712, 713
see also manuscripts; scripts
Cambridge History of Islam, first 332–334
camels 283–284, 753
canals 278, 279, 298
captivity narratives 487–488
caravans 318
ḥajj 128
caravanserais 314
Carion, Johannes 493–494

Index

- carpets 710, 739, 742
 cartography 613–620
 administrative use 614
 architectural plans 614, 619
 and astronomy 613, 614–615
 atlases 613, 617; of Islam 479–480
 Balkhī school 479–480, 619
 Chinese artistic influence 619, 624
 and cosmography 613, 615–616
 cross-cultural influences 619–620
 and decorative arts 613, 625; *see also* maps
 under metalwork; textiles; tiles
 and discoveries of sixteenth century: 616
 geometrical symbolism 615–616
 Ibn Ḥawqal 616
 as illustrations in books 613, 614, 615,
 623–624
 maritime and coastal 488–489, 614–615, 617,
 618–619
 patronage 613–614, 615
 and pilgrimages 613, 617
 political use 613–614
 portolan charts 488, 617, 618–619
 Ptolemaic strand 478, 619
 and *qibla* 594, 613 n147, 616–617, 623, 625
 regional maps 614, 623
 of sacred spaces and rituals 614, 616–617
 spherical maps 614, 625 n202
 terrestrial maps 613, 614–619
 town plans 619, 623
 translations 215, 492–493, 492 n90, 620, 636
 world maps 614, 619–620, 623, 624
see also architecture (plans and drawings)
 and under individual regions and
 Europe; Fāṭimids; history and
 historiography; mathematics; Mughal
 empire; Ottoman empire; Ṣafavid
 empire; Tīmūrid empire; warfare
- cash, conversion of wealth in kind to
 345, 347
- Caspian region
 transhumance 284, 285
 Zaydism 131, 133, 135–136, 229
- caste system 227
- Catalonia 309
- Caucasus
 elite slaves from 11, 315, 522–523
 Sufism 12, 85
see also individual states
- cavalry 260, 288–289
- Çelebī Efendī (Jamāl al-Dīn al-Aqsarāʿī) 93
- celibacy 374, 379
- Centiloquium* 650
- centralisation
 ‘Abbāsīd 229, 570
 Aceh 257
 Mamlūk 252–253
 Mughal 273
 Ottoman 273, 634, 703
 Ṣafavid 266, 273
- centre, periphery and outermost regions of
 Muslim world 476–477
- ceramics 6, 724–726, 728–729
 Chinese imports and influence 709,
 724–726
 cooking pots 752, 759, 762
 craftsmen’s signatures 728–729
 glazed; regional styles 710–711, 712,
 729–731
 handmade vessels 739–741, 741
 inscriptions 678, 710–711, 712
 lustre painting 729–730, 730
mināʿī ware 730–731, 731
 production 728–729; rural 739–741, 741
 stonepaste or frit wares 725–726; *see also* tiles
 and under Iznik
- Chaghatay Turkic language and literature 4,
 426, 427, 429, 430
Bāburnāma 427, 456, 471–472, 487
- Chaldaeian astronomy 213
- Chaldiran, battle of 289
- chamberlains
 Mamlūk *hājib* 253
 on *qāḏī*’s staff 158–159, 161
- chancery manuals 450
- Chandā, Māh Laqā 442
- Chardin, Jean 12–13
- charity 54, 102, 512
 food distributions 369, 370, 762
see also alms-tax; endowments, pious
- charms, magical 371, 651
- chārsū* 282
- charts, maritime 488–489, 617, 618–619
- chemistry 215, 653, 654–655
see also alchemy
- Chengīz Khān *see* Chinggis Khān
- Cherkeshī Muṣṭafā and Cherkeshiyya 94
- children
 concubine mothers’ rights 149
 custody 182–183
 early education 506, 517, 520–522
 and law 169, 182–183
 of mixed marriages 204–205
 parents’ responsibility 520, 521
 toys and games 521
see also devşirme; education (elementary)

Index

- China 2
 agriculture and horticulture 301, 576
 Alexander's legendary conquest 480
 art and architecture 2, 4, 218, 704, 724–726
 and Central Asia 4, 311, 481
 cultural synthesis with Islam 218
 descriptions of 479, 486, 490, 491, 492
 Islam in 6, 704
 lacquer 726
 landscape painting 619, 624
 magic-medicinal bowls 631
 under Mongols 319
 in Muslim world-view 476
 papermaking 590, 677, 724
 Sufism 85
 textiles 726
 trade 255, 256, 318–319, 724
 translation of scientific texts from 576
see also under ceramics; miniature painting;
 sciences
- Chinggis or Chingiz Khān 7, 250, 288,
 421, 455
- Chinggisids 7
- Chishtī, Khwāja Mu'īn al-Dīn Ḥasan 99
- Chishtī, Shaykh Khūb Muḥammad 437–438
- Chishtiyya 85–86, 102, 519
 community living 102
 in India 99–100, 102
- Christians and Christianity
 Arab, pre-Islamic 21, 205, 395
 and Arabic literature: authors 397–398;
 characters 396, 397
 Arabisation 189, 205, 208
 art and architecture 685, 732
 autonomy, communal 205
 Bektāshī practices and 99
 Byzantine Orthodoxy 21, 566
 Christology 26, 41
 church buildings 45, 203, 204, 714
 conversion to Islam 19, 187, 189, 207, 208, 253;
 forcible 200, 201
 culture 205, 207–208
 diet 761
 'holy men' 46
 and Islam 19–20, 27, 29, 41–42, 50–51;
 syncretism 56–57, 138
 Jacobite Church 573
 Jews under Christian rule 204, 206
 al-Kindī and high-ranking clergy 573
 languages 189, 205, 208, 213, 395, 679
 legal status under Islamic rule 202–204
 medieval distribution 208
 Monophysitism 21, 566
- mysticism 46
 Nestorian 21, 566, 568, 571, 573
 Nicene Creed 41
 and political authority 23
 restrictions on 51, 203, 204
 riots against 204
 sciences 573
 wine poetry 397
see also ahl al-dhimma; Bible; Copts;
 Crusades and Crusaders; iconoclasm;
 monasticism; Trinity; *and under* Africa;
 North; al-Andalus; asceticism;
 martyrdom; medicine; Muḥammad,
 the Prophet; Ottoman empire;
 Qur'ān; Ṣafavid empire; sexuality;
 Syria; translation movement; women
- Cicero, M. Tullius 603
- Circassians 3, 11
- citadels 280
- cities 274–283
 administration 276–277, 282–283
 and agriculture 290, 295, 296–297, 299
 biographical dictionaries on particular
 460, 464
 commerce and development of 275–276,
 278, 282
 cooking 754, 756
 expansion 276–277, 306–307
 extra-mural quarters 276, 279–280
 fabric 5, 274–276, 279, 282–283; *see also*
planning below, and individual types of
building
 food supply 295, 306, 331, 762
 industries 277, 295, 303, 726–733; specialisms
 729–732
 Islam originates in 275
 leaders 167
 literacy 412
 maps and plans 619, 623
 market gardening 290
 medieval and early modern 280–281
 mosques as feature 5, 274–275, 278, 282
 new foundations 275–276, 277–279, 282;
see also amṣār; palatine cities
 nomads own properties in 285–286
 plague in 329
 planning 281, 282; absence 274, 276, 278, 280,
 281, 282
 population estimates 306–308
 prosperous classes 274, 732–733, 754, 756; *see*
also merchants
 size 274
 topographic descriptions 464

Index

- in Turko-Mongolian empires 281
walled and unwalled 279–280
see also amṣār; Arabs and Arabia
(urbanisation); cooking (urban tastes);
palatine cities; *and under* conquests;
countryside; migrations
- citrus trees 216, 293–294, 299
- civil wars 30, 107–108, 226, 465
- Classical Antiquity 6, 723
see also Greek culture
- classical ideal, Arabic 384
- classical Islam 29–48
- clientship 186
see also mawālī
- climate change, possible 297–298, 299
- climes, Ptolemaic (*iqlīm*) 477–478, 479–480
- clocks, mechanical 638–639
- clothing 214
see also under ahl al-dhimma; Sufism
- La cocina hispano-magrebi* 755 n11
- coconut palms 293–294
- Codex cumanicus* 426
- coffee 305
- cognomina 461
- coinage: 340–345
‘Abbāsīd 229; al-Ma’mūn 229, 570; struck in
east in name of Cairo caliph 252
‘Abd al-Malik 334, 335, 688–690, 689
Akbar 270
Almohad 630
Artuqid 6
Byzantine; early Islamic imitations
688, 689
circulation and value 342–344
circulation in sealed purses of set values 337
Delhi sultanate 252
early Islamic designs 688–690, 693
Egypt 341, 343–345
hoards 344
inscriptions 678, 688–690, 710
issuing authority and control of 342–343
Malay sultanates 255
merchants’ preferences 337, 343–344
method of striking 341
modern scholarship 334, 338, 341–342
Mongol 349 n68
Muzaffarid 252
ninth-century independent dynasties 233
Saladin 343–344
Sasanian; early Islamic adaptations
688, 689
spear of Prophet on 719
sylloges 341–342
- of ‘Umar ibn al-Khaṭṭāb 226
units of account 342
variability in value 337–338 n24
variety in circulation 337, 343–344
weighing of 348
and weights 350
- coitus interruptus* 365–366, 376
- collective rule
Central Asian rural settlements 294
Indonesia 257, 258
Malay sultanates 255–256, 257–258
Mamlūk sultanate 252
- colloquial language 412, 452, 674–675
- colonial period 104, 305, 494, 639
law 144, 171, 174, 177–182
see also India (British rule)
- Colyaer (Colyer, Collier), Justinus 637
- combinatorics 581, 587–588
- commemorative works
art and craft 719–723
monuments 693; *see also* mausolea; tombs
- commenda (commercial partnership) 336,
352–353
- commentary, literary
al-Shīrbīnī’s skit on 412
supercommentary form 411
- commerce 332–354
adībs involved in 401
barter 340
in Egypt 338–340
ḥajj and 5–6
law 41, 145, 174, 679
legal and commercial instruments 41,
339–340, 352–353; *see also* commenda;
contracts; partnerships
and literacy 529
modern scholarship 332–337; future 353–354
paper as aid to development 9
problems in modern period 16
sources on 338–339
taxation 254
and urban development 275–276, 278, 282
variability 339–340
weights and measures 348–352
women’s investment 368
see also markets; merchants; money; trade
- communité villageoise* 294
- community, Islamic 23, 24, 231
- Comnene emperors of Byzantium 313
- Companions (*muhājirūn*, *ṣaḥāba*) 31, 445, 462–463
actions as normative 29, 37
legal authority 151, 152
and succession to Prophet 28, 107

Index

- compasses, magnetic 596
 compendia 4–5, 6
 complexes, architectural 281, 512, 702
 concubines 149, 362–363, 392
 royal 369, 370
 condiments 752, 760, 761
 conduct
 codes 7, 522–523
 literature 4, 6
 confiscations 290
 conjuration 651
 conquests
 agricultural homogenisation 291, 292–293
 and Arab tribal society 147–148, 226, 283,
 285, 308–309
 booty 148
 Byzantine artistic influence through 685
 and cities; *amṣār* 228, 275–276; other new
 foundations 276; settlement of Arabs
 in existing 309
 and conversion to Islam 29–30, 191, 227
 and cooking 753–756
 migrations in wake of 308–309, 311
 military organisation 283, 309
 society and law after 148–150, 226
 and translation movement 566
 and Western perceptions of Islam 217
 consensus
 and dispute settlement 168
 scholarly (*ijmāʿ*) 8, 39, 51, 54, 154, 156
 social 152–153, 287–288
 Constantinople 259, 313, 487
 Constitution of Medina 23, 225
 contraception 308, 365–366, 376
 contracts 145–146, 160, 669, 670, 675, 679
 law of 41, 145, 318
 of marriage 362–363, 370, 674 n22
 see also partnerships, commercial
 convents *see* monasticism *and under* Sufism
 conversion to Islam 184–201
 accounts of spiritual experience
 468–469, 471
 and agricultural homogenisation 291
 and Arabisation 184, 185, 208, 424
 diplomacy and 481
 by free will or compulsion 200–201
 irreversibility 188, 204–205
 mass 186–187, 188
 methods 161, 184, 187–188
 and mixed marriages 197
 name evidence 189–192
 post-conquest, outside heartlands 192–199
 present-day 200
 prisoners of war 186, 191, 227
 rates 188–192, 227
 reasons 185–187, 188, 191, 198
 by rulers and ruling elites 186, 196–197, 199,
 254
 and scholarship 37, 216; scholars
 instrumental in 193–194,
 197, 228
 of slaves 186, 191, 198
 social factors 186, 196
 Sufis instrumental in 46, 195, 197, 199, 255
 unintentional use of formula 205
 and urban growth 276
 see also *mawālī*, *and under individual regions*
 and Christianity; conquests; dynastic
 states; Jews; Mongols; trade; Turks;
 Zoroastrianism
 Cook, M. A. 336, 339
 cooking 751–763
 Arabian cuisine 751–752, 754, 762
 Babylonian cuneiform texts on 755
 classical period 756–761
 commercial establishments 758
 conquests and 753–756
 encyclopaedias with sections on 757
 equipment 752, 757–758, 759, 762
 ḥadīth on 751–752, 753, 757
 household staff 759
 and humoral theory 755, 759
 hygiene 758–759
 ingredients and processes 754–755, 757,
 759–761
 kitchens and equipment 757–759
 later Middle Ages 761–763
 luxury foods 756
 manuals and cookbooks 755–756, 758,
 761; *see also* Ibn Sayyār al-Warrāq
 Persian influence 754, 762
 regional dishes 754
 sweet–sour taste 756, 760
 urban tastes 754, 756
 as women’s work 371
 see also condiments, *individual foodstuffs*, *and*
 under individual regions
 cookshops 758
 Copernicus, Nicolaus 607, 635
 Copts
 arts 620–621
 in bureaucracy 204, 253
 calendar 340
 church 57, 188
 conversion to Islam 200, 253
 distinctive clothing 204

Index

- hermeticism 566
languages: Arabic 208; Coptic 213, 679
proportion of population 207–208
copyists 401, 526
Cordoba, Umayyad caliphate of 218,
238, 276
area controlled by 309
astronomy and astrology 591–592
Byzantine cultural contacts 574, 723
Christian martyrs 188–189
cultural liberalism and tolerance 50
extra-mural suburbs 276, 279
fall 10, 238, 310
and Fāṭimids 574
Great Mosque 45, 696, 698–699, 708, 723
Ibn Ḥazm's childhood in 371–372
ivory pyxides 736
library 678
Madīnat al-Zahrā' 6, 279, 736
medicine 663
patronage of learning 573–574
philosophy banned 559
women's education 371–372
Corinthian architectural order 6
Cornwallis, Charles (first Marquis Cornwallis)
180
corruption, complaints of 162
corvées 294, 295, 304
cosmology
and alchemy 655
books of cosmography 490–491, 613, 615–616
and history 400
human body used to represent cosmos 626
and magic 648–649
see also astrology; astronomy; natures
Cotabato sultanate 257
cotton 216, 293–294, 304, 305, 340
countryside 290–305
and cities 295, 296–297, 303, 324, 325
collective management 294
crafts 303, 739–742
diversity 290–291
long-term economic fluctuations 298–302
markets 296, 303
migration to, to avoid plague 330–331
nomad–sedentary relations 286, 295–296, 297
population 307, 324–325
security 295, 296
taxation 295
vulnerabilities 296–298
women's status 362
see also agriculture
courtesans 392–394
courts, judicial *see* justice; *qāḍīs*
courts, royal and imperial
‘Abbāsīd 277, 400–401, 662
and *adab* 400–401
Arabic element in culture 4–5
and cartography 614, 615
conduct literature 4
cookery 761
craft workshops 575–576, 736–737
historiography 447
manuscripts and miniature painting
319–320, 575–576, 624–625, 738
migration of artists 319–320, 327
mobile Turko-Mongolian 271
Persian cultural influence 3–4, 685
poetry 390–391, 417–418
sciences 572–577; *see also under* astrology;
medicine
storytelling 431
textiles 277
urban locations 276–277
see also nadīms; palaces; *and under individual*
states
couscous 755, 762
cows 759, 762–763
craft *see* art and craft, Islamic
craftsmen 12–13, 726–733
guilds 86, 728
migration 319–320, 327–329, 729, 731–732
Persian literature aimed at 415
workshops 726, 728; royal 575–576, 736–737
Crete 327
Crimea 429
criticism, literary 388
Crusades and Crusaders 19
and agriculture 300
Constantinople occupied by 313
impact on Islam 49
in Jabal Anṣāriyya 137
and *jihād* 50–51
and Nizāriyya 130, 137
Nuṣayrīs' encounters with 137
Third Crusade 560
‘*ulamā*’ and 54
Usāma ibn Munqidh's memoir 471
Ctesiphon 685, 699
Çukurova 325
cultural variation in Islam 3, 290, 360
cunning man, literary figure of 7
curiosities, book of, from Ṭinnīs 618, 619
curry 763
Cyprus 320, 325, 327
Cyrenaica 92, 299

Index

- al-Dabbī (astrologer) 591–592
 al-Dā'ī ila'l-Ḥaqq (al-Ḥasan ibn al-Qāsim) 133
 Dakanī language 436, 437, 438, 439, 441
 Dāmād, Mīr (Muḥammad Bāqir Astarābādī)
 12, 121, 516
 Damascus
 astronomical observations 598
bimāristān of Nūr al-Dīn 701, 701, 718
 Byzantine heritage 228, 685, 723
 capital under Umayyads 218, 276
 citadel 280
 conquest 228, 685
dār al-imāra 276
 demography 323–324
 economy dependent on *hajj* 5–6
 education 503–504, 514–515; see also
madrāsas below
 Great Mosque 45, 276, 612, 695, 694–696, 716;
 mosaics 694, 723
 law schools 252
madrāsas 368–369, 503–504, 511, 513,
 526–527
 Mamlūk period 280, 345
 palace 280
 prostitution and alcohol consumption 377
 public recitations in modern 680
 Sufism 95, 368–369, 373–374
 women 357, 367, 368–369, 373–374, 377,
 526–527, 528
 Dāmghān 705, 706
 Damietta 95
 dance 57, 80, 85, 95, 371
 Dandarawiyya 92
dār al-ʿahd 475
dār al-ḥarb see non-Muslim world
dār al-imāra 276, 279
dār al-islām 29
 juridical definition 475
dār al-ṣulh 475
dār al-thiqa 364
 al-Dārānī, Abū Sulaymān 67
 Darāz, Sayyid Muḥammad Gēsū 438
 al-Darazī, Muḥammad 127
 Dard, Sayyid Khwāja Mīr 442
 al-Darqāwī, Abū Ḥamid al-ʿArabī 91
Dars-i Niẓāmī 516
 Daryāʾī, Qāḍī Maḥmūd 437
 al-Dastānī, Muḥammad 72
 dates and date palms 292, 303, 752, 753, 760
 Dāʾūdī faction of Ṭayyibiyya 129
 David, house of 225
 Dawānī, Jalāl al-Dīn 248–249, 514, 516
dawla (‘state’) 228–229, 233–234, 254
 Dawlatabad 519
 Dāwūd Kirmānī 100
ḍayʿa (type of estate) 291, 302–303
 Ḍayfa Khātūn, regent of Aleppo 360–361, 369
 Daylam (Daylamān) 133–134
 Dayr Qunnā monastery 397
 debt 146, 295
 Deccan 99, 122, 268–269, 437, 438–441
 decline, Western perception of Islamic
 post-medieval 217
 decorative arts see art and craft, Islamic;
 ornament
 decrees, Ottoman royal (*fermāns*) 429
Dede Korkud, Book of 429
 Delhi
 education 442, 511
 Quwwāt al-Islām mosque 698, 705, 724
 language and literature 434–435, 436, 437,
 440, 441–442
 Red Fort 437
 reform movement 14
 Sufism 100, 101
 sultanate 236, 252, 268–273, 319–320, 456;
 political thought 235, 247, 268–270
 Tīmūr’s sack 317
 Demak 197, 704
 Demirdāsh al-Muḥammadī and
 al-Demirdāshiyya 93
 demography 306–308, 320–324
 and food resources 299, 300, 324–325, 331
 and plague and pandemics 307, 308, 329–331
 see also birth control; deportations,
 Ottoman; migration; population
 figures; and under individual regions
 demons 643
Denkard 567
 deportations, Ottoman 319, 322, 325, 327–329
 see also *devşirme*
 dervishes 57, 314
 howling 199
 wandering (Qalandariyya) 95–96
 see also Mawlawiyya
 designation of successor (*naṣṣ*) 107, 113, 123, 132,
 243, 312
devşirme (Ottoman levy of boys) 11, 201, 260,
 328, 523, 634
 al-Dhahabī, Shams al-Dīn Abū ʿAbd Allāh
 Muḥammad 451, 462
al-Ṭibb al-nabawī 450, 660, 661, 666
 al-Dhahabī, Shams al-Dīn al-Saydawī 744, 750
 Dhahabiyya 104
dhikr (Sufi ritual) 72, 83, 86, 745
 in particular orders 85, 86, 92, 94–95, 102

Index

- dhimmīs* see *ahl al-dhimma*
 Dhū 'l-Nūn al-Miṣrī 67–68, 652, 653
 diacritical marks 670, 673
 dialects 668–669, 671, 675
 Diaphantus see Diophantus
 diaries 431, 529
 dictionaries 587–588
 toponym 490
 Turkic languages 425, 426, 432
 Turkish–Arabic 427, 428, 761
 dietary law
 Islamic 751–752, 753, 761
 Judaic 753
 Dihlavī language 437, 438
 al-Dihlawī, Shāh Walī Allāh 14, 59, 101, 102, 516
 Dila' 90
 al-Dimashqī, Abū Bakr ibn Bahrām 619,
 636, 637
 al-Dimashqī, Abū 'Uthmān 539, 662–663
 al-Dīnawarī 446
 Diophantus 539, 580, 581
 Dioscorides, Pedanius 538, 621, 622–623,
 658, 723
 diplomacy 481, 613, 639
 embassy memoirs (*sefāretnāme*) genre
 432, 483
 to non-Muslim world 480–484, 486, 491,
 493, 639
 dirham unit of weight 350
 discovery, voyages of 301, 305, 616
 disease, pandemic 307
 see also plague
 disputation, formal (*munāzara*) 509–510
 dissection, human 665
 Divāna, Sarb Sukh 442, 443
 divination 214, 630, 651
 divorce 160, 362, 363–365, 366
diwāns, qāḍīs' 160–161
diyārāt poets 397
 Djawnpur 100
 Dome of the Rock 690–692, 691, 693
 Byzantine influence 691–692,
 693, 719
 decoration 692
 inscriptions 673, 690, 692, 710
 Sasanian influence 693
 domes 699, 700, 700, 702, 712, 718
 Don–Volga region 317
 see also Volga region
 Dōme sub-sect of converted Jews 200
 Doughty, C. M. 751, 752
 dowries 362, 363, 364, 366
 dragoman on staff of *qāḍī* 159
 drama see theatre
 dreams
 in biography and autobiography 467–468,
 470
 interpretation 214, 428
 dress see clothing
 drought, protection against 193
 Druzes 127–128
 Dūr, near Sāmarrā'; tomb of Imām Dūr 718
 Dūst Muḥammad 728
duwayra ('cloister'), first Sufi 65
 dyestuffs 303, 742
 dynastic rule 31–32, 254
 opposition to 31–32; see also Khārjism
 dynastic states, independent and
 semi-independent 35, 233
 and conversion to Islam 191, 198
 investiture by caliph 35, 241
 sciences 573–574
 East India Company, British 13, 516
 Easter, Coptic celebration of 57
 Eaton, Richard 194–196
 Ebū Bekr el-Dimeshqī see Abū Bakr
 al-Dimashqī
 Ebū Bekr Rāṭīb 483
 eclipses, lunar 600–601
 economic history
 modern scholarship 332–337, 341, 353–354
 sources 333, 338–339
 ecumene, Hellenistic 217–218
 Edirne 322, 429
 education 497–531
 of *ahl al-dhimma* 203
 aids to learning 509–510
 British system in India 443
 in Christian monasteries 397, 590
 common curriculum 5, 516
 corporal punishment 521–522, 524
 elementary 498, 506, 517, 520–522, 527
 inclusivity and flexibility 530
 Islamic world connected by 5, 516, 529–530
 in law 10, 52, 90, 163–164, 170, 424, 512–513
 memorisation 506, 507, 509, 672
 popular 524–526, 530
 reforms: Egypt 484; Iran 639; Ottoman
 empire 175, 176–177, 638, 639
 religious emphasis 215
 scientific 515–516, 521, 590, 634, 638; in
 madrāsas 503, 514, 574, 577, 611,
 638, 664
 self-teaching 510–511, 549, 664
 of slave elites 522–524, 530

Index

- education (cont.)
 spread beyond central Islamic lands 514–518
 Sufi 84, 86, 518–520, 527, 529–530
 and Sunni ascendancy over Shī'ism 10
 teacher–pupil relationship 52, 442, 498,
 505–511, 514, 515; in Sufism 84, 86,
 519–520, 527
 teaching process 505–511
 and trade 529–530
see also scholarship *and under individual disciplines and places and* bureaucrats; family; Ibn Sīnā; *madrasas*; Qur'ān; Sufism; women
- effeminate (*mukhannathūn*) 379, 392
- egalitarianism, Islamic 140
- Egypt
adab 412
 administration 204, 484
 agriculture 300, 304, 308
 Arabic language 208, 315, 679
 art and architecture 327, 576, 685, 719
 Banū Hilāl in 311
 cadastral surveys 345, 346, 347
 calendar 340
 cartography 614
 Christians *see* Copts
 coinage 341, 343–345
 commerce, mechanisms of 338–340
 conversion to Islam 186, 188, 200, 679
 cooking 755
 Druzes 127
 economic history, sources 333, 338–339; *see also* Cairo (Geniza documents)
 education 484, 512, 573–574
 and Hellenistic culture 213
 historiography 447–449, 472
 Isis cult 214
 Ismā'īliyya 10, 129
 Jews 200, 204, 207
 law 172, 352–353
 Louis IX of France's campaign 348
 magic healing 631
 musicians 394
 Napoleonic invasion 472
 oral culture 674, 679
 Ottoman era 11, 315–316, 320, 339
 papermills 677
 papyri 186, 339, 578
 plague 329, 330
 popular literature 679
 population 307–308, 329
 Qur'āns 674, 712
 Saladin's conquest 10
- Sufism 55, 67–68, 85, 92, 94, 95; *see also under* Cairo
 taxation 186, 188, 320
 textiles 277, 736
 trade 13, 317–318, 353
 weights 349–352
see also individual places and rulers; 'Abbāsids (rump caliphate); Copts; Mamlūk sultanate; Mamlūks; *and under* Fā'imids
- elements, physical 640, 645, 648–649, 659
- elites 1–2
 conversion to Islam 124, 193, 194,
 196–197, 199
 local 167, 316, 327
see also individual dynasties; bureaucrats; cities (prosperous classes); rulers; slaves and slavery (military and palace elite); 'ulamā'; women (royal)
- eloquence 502–503
- embassies, accounts of 480–484, 493
sefāretnāme 432, 483
- embroidery 371
 ṭirāz bands 712–714, 734
- 'Emerald tablet' (*al-Lawḥ al-zumurrudī*)
 649–650
- Empedocles 648–649
- encyclopaedias 4–5, 10, 491
 and sciences 575, 580
- Enderun (Ottoman Palace School) 523–524,
 634, 638
- endowments, pious 307, 321
 Sufi 60, 84, 90, 93, 98–99, 368–369
see also waqfs, and under hospitals; *madrasas*; women
- engineering 215
- enlightenment, 'Abbāsīd 565
- Enoch, prophet 463–464
- entertainments 391–394, 452, 586
 popular 499, 679, 680
see also singers, female; storytelling; theatre
- epic poetry
 Persian 14, 414, 416, 418–419,
 420–421
 popular 7
 Turkish folk 7, 428, 432
- epigram, Persian 416–417, 418
- Epirus 330
- epistemology 655–656, 658, 661
- epistles (*risāla* genre) 384–385, 396
- epistolary manuals 272, 503
- equinoxes 137
- Eritrea 92

Index

- eschatology 127–128, 146
Shī'ite 110, 115, 125
see also Mahdism and the mahdī
- esoteric thought 8, 9, 77
see also hermeticism
- esoteric/exoteric distinction 125
- ethical edification, Persian works of
415, 416
- Ethiopia 486, 684
religion 21, 92, 193–194, 219
- ethnic particularism *see shu'ūbiyya*
- Euclid 580, 582, 665
on *analysis* and *synthesis* 583
and magic squares and amicable numbers
631
manuscripts of 577, 623
and mechanics 586
translations 539, 579
vision, theory of 585
- Euphrates Valley 292, 293, 298, 299, 304
- Europe 16
art 14, 721, 724
cartography 492, 614, 618
Hellenistic culture 213
Ibn Rushd's influence 556, 559
al-Jayhānī's lost work on eastern 490
Jew-badge 204
licentia docendi 510
medicine 634–635, 650
merchant shipping 13
in Muslim world-view 476, 479
and natural world 217–218
and Ottoman empire 48, 326, 431, 482–483,
486
science and technology 4, 16, 433, 492
trade 304; companies' monopolies 305
translation of Arabic works 4, 217, 650
travellers from 633–634
*see also individual countries and Crusades and
Crusaders; India (British rule;
travelogues)*
- Eustathios 536
- evil, problem of 43
- Evliyā Çelebi 431, 484, 486–487
- eyewitnessing 485–486
- fables 227, 415
- Faden, William 493
- al-Faḍl ibn Sahl 570, 572
- Faḍl Allāh Shīrāzī 516
- Faḍlī, Faḍl-i 'Alī 436
- fairs, Meccan pre-Islamic 22
- Fā'iz, Ṣadr al-Dīn 436
- fakhr* (boasting) genre 7
- Fakhr al-Dīn al-Rāzī 246, 510, 533, 561,
562, 612
Ash'arism 44, 535, 561
- Fakhr-i mudabbir (Muḥammad ibn Maṣṣūr
Mubārakshāh) 247
- Fakhrī of Herat 528
- falsafa see philosophy*
- family
education in 527, 664
law 145, 174, 175, 182
networks, and learning 511, 574
privacy and sanctity 274
see also children; divorce; marriage; women
(and family honour; family
relationships)
- famine 297, 331, 359, 753
- fanā' see under Sufism*
- Fanṣūrī, Ḥamza 103
- al-Fārābī, Abū Naṣr (Alpharabius) 217, 539, 540,
545–548
and Aristotle 501, 546, 547, 549
classical rationalism 532, 539, 541
and mechanics 586
on music 743, 747–748
philosophy 539, 540, 545–548; metaphysics
546–548, 549, 550, 552, 554
on political science 232, 236, 248
pupils 539, 544
- Farā'id al-sulūk* 237
- Farangī Maḥall tradition 505, 516, 531
- Farhād wa Shīrīn 427
- al-Fārisī, Kamāl al-Dīn 581, 631–633
- fasting 25, 38, 94–95, 144
- Fatehpur Sikri 279, 281, 282, 716
- Faṭṭiyya 114
- Fāṭima bint Ibn al-Muthannā 373
- Fāṭima bint Muḥammad 107
- Fāṭima (Egyptian founder of convent) 369
- Fāṭimids 125–129, 232
'Abd Allāh al-Mahdī founds 124
cartography 614, 618, 619
ceremonial 390–391
decorative arts 719, 736–737, 737
and Druzes 127
Egyptian caliphate: established 126;
overthrown 10, 232
historiography 447–448
Ibn Khaldūn on rise and fall 238–239
imamate, theory of 574
Ismā'īlism 47, 124, 125–129
and Khārījism 140
and Kutāma Berbers 289

Index

- Fātimids (cont.)
 legitimisation 574
 library 678
 missionary activities 126, 232
 North African caliphate 124, 125–126, 140,
 232, 289, 573–574
 patronage of learning 390–391, 573–574
 propaganda 390–391
 Rustamids conquered by 140
 terrorism 232
 tombs at Aswān 720
 and Umayyads of Spain 574
 women as transmitters of *ḥadīth* 528
fatwā (pl. *fatāwā*) 40, 138, 172, 261, 526
 issuing of 40, 164, 172
 literature 172–174
 of 1998, on *jihād* against Americans 50–51
 fealty, declaration of (*bayʿa*) 31, 240
 Ferdinand, king of Aragon 310
fermāns (Ottoman royal decrees) 429
 festivals
 Nuṣayrī 137, 138–139
 Persian 137, 418, 680
 Prophet's birthday 58, 525
 recitations and storytelling at 38, 680
sūmāmes at Ottoman 432
 Fez 282, 749
 figs 292
 figurative art 682, 684, 686, 693
 portraiture 14, 622–623, 624, 738
 prohibition in religious contexts 2, 42,
 214–215, 686, 693
 finance, public 283, 295
see also taxation
fiqh see law and jurisprudence
 Firdawsī; *Shāhnāma* 6, 9, 418–419, 420, 454
 illustrations 731, 731, 738–739
 on kingship and prophecy 234
 metre 414
 Turkish translation 3–4, 429
 Firdawsīyya 99, 100, 102
 firearms 289, 315
 Firūz Shāh Bahmanī 269
 fish in diet 755, 759
fitna, first 30, 107–108, 226
 Flanders 724
 foetal development, work on 665–666
 folk culture, Arabian 402, 444, 445, 589–590,
 659–660
 folk literature, Turkish 7, 427, 428, 431, 432
 food 751–763
 distributions to poor 369, 370, 762
 and population 306, 324–325
 shortages 331, 751–752, 753
 sun-drying 752, 753
see also individual foodstuffs; cooking; dietary
 law; and under cities; demography
 forbidden (*ḥarām*), legal category 145–146
 Fort William, College of, Calcutta 441, 443
 France
 current growth of Islam 200
 Embassy printing-press, Istanbul 433
 historiography 491, 492, 493
 medieval wars against Muslims 49, 309
 Napoleonic invasion of Egypt 472
 and Ottoman administration 176, 484
 plague 330
 technology 16, 433
 Turkish translations of works 493, 636
 Frederick II Hohenstaufen, Holy Roman
 Emperor 559
 Frederick II, king of Prussia 483
 freedmen 32, 186, 191, 314–315, 365
 fruit-growing 292, 293–294, 760
 Fuḍayl, Banū 304
 Fuḍayl ibn 'Iyād 65
 Fuḍūlī 430–431
 Fulbe 92
 fumigation to prevent plague 330–331
 fundamentalism, modern Islamic 13–14
funduqs 275–276
 funerals 161, 359
 funerary structures 369, 693
see also mausolea; tombs
fuqahāʾ (legal specialists) 154–155
furūsiyya (Mamlūk code of conduct)
 522–523
 Fustāt 148, 213, 228, 275, 279
futuwwa (Sufi code of spiritual chivalry) 64
 Gabriel 643
 Gagauz Turks 313–314
 Galata 322, 515
 Galen
 Pseudo-Galenic manuscript, *Kitāb*
al-diryāq 622–623, 738
 translations into Arabic 538, 539, 573, 586
see also medicine (Galenic system)
 Galland, Antoine 13
 Gāmdhanī, Shaykh 'Alī Muḥammad Jīv 437
 games, children's 521
 Gao 193
 gardens 1, 4, 290, 300, 638
 Gardīzī 454
 garrison towns *see* *aṃṣār*
 Gayo district, Sumatra 219–220

Index

- gender issues
 and medical examination 661
 sources on 355
see also homosexuality; sexuality; women
- genealogy 461–464
 figurative and intellectual 460, 461–464, 487, 494
 in historiography 445
 manipulation 285, 461, 463–465
 names as genealogies 461
 of Prophet 461, 468
 purity of descent and 375, 379
 tribal 285, 461, 472–473
 Turkish 429–430
- Genghiz Khan *see* Chinggis Khān
- Geniza documents *see under* Cairo
- Genoa 315
- geography
 administrative 445, 446, 478–479, 489–490
 ‘atlas of Islam’ and Balkhī school 479–480, 619
 illustrated books 623
 in local histories 447
 non-Muslim material 215, 477–484, 492–493
 non-Ptolemaic works 478–480
 and Ottoman reforms 635–637, 638
 Ptolemaic tradition 477–484
 translations into Ottoman Turkish 492–493, 492 n90, 620, 636
 Turkish literature 428, 431
see also cartography
- geology 215
- geomancy 643
- geometry 501, 573, 580, 582–583, 584, 600
 application 587; *see also* ornament (geometric)
 Ottoman study 523, 638
 pre-Islamic 579
see also under cartography
- Georgia, Şafavid slaves from 11, 266, 273
- Germany 304, 483, 493
- Ghadīr Khumm, *ḥadīth* of 107
- Ghālib, Şeykh 431–432
- Ghana, northern 516
- Ghassānids 147, 391, 685
- Ghāyat al-ḥakīm* (*Picatrix*) 649
- ghayba* *see* occultation
- Ghaybī al-Ṭawrizī 729
- ghazal* (love poetry)
 Arabic 392, 393, 408, 409, 430–431, 440
 Persian 416–417, 418, 420–421
 Turkic 426–427
 women speakers 440
- al-Ghazālī, Abū Ḥāmid Muḥammad
 76–78
 on anatomy 662
 on application of science 587
 Ash‘arism 44
 on astrology 612, 645
 on astronomy and religious scholarship 610–612
 on contraception 366
 on education 520, 521–522
 Fakhr al-Dīn al-Rāzī and 561
 Ibn Rushd’s response to 556, 557
 and Ismā‘īlī doctrine of *ta‘līm* 130
 on magic 642, 645
 philosophy 533, 552–553, 610–612
 and physical elements 645
 political theory 234, 235, 241, 243–244, 246, 247, 250
 on scholars’ behaviour 499
 spiritual autobiography 77, 471
 and Sufism 53, 75, 76–78, 83, 500–501
 teaching in Baghdad 76–77, 511
 travel 5
 and writing 510, 675
- Ghāzān Khān 199, 287, 300, 317, 491–492
- ghāzī* warriors 259
- Ghazna; towers 705–708
- Ghaznavids 194, 236, 312, 480
 literature under 246–247, 418, 454
 Sangbast mausoleum 720
- ghilmān* 48, 233, 284, 288, 312
 ghulām-based states 268, 312; *see also* Būyids; Ghaznavids; Sāmānids
- Ghilzai Afghans 289
- ghinā’* (secular art music) 745, 746
- Ghiyāth al-Dīn Abū al-Faṭḥ Muḥammad 705
- Ghiyāth al-Dīn Maṣūfūr Shīrāzī 516
- Ghiyāth al-Dīn Naqqāsh 481, 492
- Ghulām ‘Alī, Shāh 101
- ghulāt* (sing. *ghālī*) *see under* Shī‘ism
- Ghumdān palace 684
- Ghūrīds 194, 236, 246–247, 455, 705, 724
- Ghuzz Turks *see* Oğuz Turks
- gifts
 diplomatic, of maps 613
 law of 160, 175, 182–183
 rich women’s, to relatives 368
 textiles as 277
- Gilān 134
- Gilānī, *Sayyid* Muḥammad Makhdūm 100
- Gilchrist, John 436, 443
- gināns* 131
- giriḥ* ornament 715–716, 718, 723

Index

- glass objects
 carved 737
 weights 349–352
- globe of universe 625 n202
- gnosis, Sufi (*ma'rifa*) 67–68, 79
- gnosticism 83, 120–121, 566
- goats 759
- God
 attributes 42, 43
 invocation in Prophetic medicine
 660–661
 Most Beautiful Names 648, 651
 oneness 20, 26
- Gog and Magog 476, 480–481
- Goitein, S. D. 337, 353
- Golconda 122
- gold, turning base metals into 654
- Golden Horde 426
- Gondeshapur 571
- Graeco-Roman world *see* Classical Antiquity;
 Greek culture; Late Antiquity
- graffiti 669, 674 n22, 674
 see also inscriptions
- grain
 consumption and population 306
 processing and cooking 752; *see also* bread
 supply 292, 296, 297, 299, 300
 see also barley; bread; wheat
- grammar, Arabic 37, 462, 504, 668, 671, 676
 prestige of discipline 502
 of written and spoken languages 668, 675
- grammars, Turkic 426, 432
- Granada 4, 10, 280, 310, 367
 Alhambra 1, 4, 280, 718, 735
- grapes 753
- gravity, specific 349
- grazing 286–287, 292, 294, 296, 297, 316
- Greaves, John 635
- Greek culture
 Alexander and translation of *Avesta* 568
 in Late Antiquity 213
 al-Ma'mūn and 570–571
 and Persian literature 414–415, 419
 pre-Islamic translations into Syriac and
 Pahlavi 589–590
 and rational scepticism 42–43
 traditionalist rejection 230
 translations into Arabic 215, 568–569, 570,
 746; philosophy 42–43, 215, 535–540,
 570–571; sciences 501, 538, 565,
 579–580, 723
 translations into Syriac and Pahlavi 538,
 589–590, 662
 see also under astronomy; mathematics;
 mechanics; medicine; music; natural
 world; philosophy; political theory
 and organisation; sciences
- Greek Orthodox Church 432, 573
- gruel 752
- Guadalquivir river, area of 358
- guilds, craftsmen's 86, 728
- Gujarat 99, 254, 256
 literature 437
- Gujarātī, Shaykh Aḥmad 439
- Gujrī language 436, 437, 441
- Gulbadan Begum 529
- Gulbarga, Karnataka 438
- Gülşehir 428
- Gulshānī, Ibrāhīm, and al-Gulshāniyya 93
- Gunnā Begam 442
- 'gunpowder empires' 272
- gunpowder weapons 289, 315
- Gurgānī 414, 416, 419, 420
- Gutas, Dimitri 538, 565–571
- Gwalior 99, 100–101
- Ḥabash al-Ḥāsib 594, 595, 617
- Ḥabīb ibn Bahrīz 573, 579
- Habsburg empire 326, 482–483, 486, 637
- Hādawiyya legal school 135
- Ḥaddādiyya 137
- al-Ḥādī, 'Abbāsīd caliph 33
- al-Ḥādī ila'l-Ḥaqq, Yahyā ibn al-Ḥusayn 134–135
- ḥadīth* 8, 36, 37–38, 500, 674–676
 authority: Companions' 462–463; *isnāds*
 37–38, 464–465, 674; popular sources
 lack 526
 biographical dictionaries of transmitters
 464–465
 collections 38, 50, 660, 677; Shī'ite 113,
 115, 127
 copyist's addition 526
 in elementary education 521, 527
 and grammar 504
 and historiography 444, 445
 and law 165; conflict with Qur'ān 37; as
 source of 38, 39, 155–156, 158
 memorisation 675–676; writing as aid to
 406, 675, 676
 and music 744
 oral transmission 5, 37, 507, 527, 675–676
 in popular education 525, 526, 680
 of Prophet 33, 38, 158, 462–463, 464–465
 public recitations 38, 408, 680
 qāḍīs' transmission 152
 Shī'ite 112, 113, 115, 127

Index

- Sufi meditation on 62–63
 time of origin 210
 topics: adultery 37; figurative art 686;
 learning 497–498, 526; luxury goods
 693; political ethics and statecraft
 246–248; *see also under* cooking; *jihād*;
 magic; medicine
 traditionalists' literal acceptance 43
 Turkic peoples' education in 424
 women transmitters 372–373, 528
 writing down 406, 675, 676, 677
see also traditionists
- al-Ḥāfīz (Fāṭimid caliph) 129
 al-Ḥāfīz, Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad Shīrāzī 421,
 423, 671–672
ḥāfīz (one who knows Qur'ān by heart)
 671–672
 Ḥāfīz-i Abrū 455
 Ḥāfīziyya 129
 Ḥafṣa bint al-Ḥājī al-Rakūniyya 373
 Ḥafṣa bint 'Umar ibn al-Khaṭṭāb 672
 Ḥafṣid dynasty of Qayrawān 696
 hagiography 89, 373
 hairdressers 370
 al-Ḥajarī, Aḥmad ibn Qāsim 482
ḥājib *see* chamberlains
hajj (pilgrimage to Mecca) 144, 200, 320, 357,
 363, 370
 becomes obligatory 29, 32
 caliphs' leading of 34
 commemoration of completion 617, 720
 maps associated with 613, 617
 narratives *see riḥla*
 Prophet's performance 27–28
 Qarmaṭī attacks on 128
 social and economic effects 5–6
- al-Ḥajjāj ibn Yūsuf 298, 687
 Ḥājī Bektāsh Walī 97–98, 99, 427–428
 Ḥājī Khalīfa *see* Kātib Çelebi
 al-Ḥakam II, Umayyad caliph of al-Andalus
 699, 723, 736
 al-Ḥākim, Fāṭimid caliph 9–10, 188, 200
 Druze beliefs about 127, 128
 al-Ḥākim al-Tirmidhī 71, 471
ḥalaqas *see* *ḥalqas*
 Ḥāleti 'Alī A'lā, Ḥasan, and al-Ḥāletiyya 93
 al-Ḥallāj 5, 46–47, 70, 71–72, 97, 629
 aftermath of execution 73
ḥalqas (study circles) 154–155, 170, 505–506, 518,
 527
 Ḥamā region 304
 Hamadhan 499, 574, 663
 al-Hamadhānī, Badī' al-Zamān 409–410
 Ḥamdallāh Mustawfī al-Qazwīnī 476
 Hamdān Qarmaṭ 123–124
 Ḥamdānids 117, 137, 279, 387, 573–574
 Ḥamdūshiyya 92
 Ḥamid al-Dīn al-Kirmānī 126, 127
 Hamilton, Charles 177
 Hammād 164
ḥammāms *see* bathhouses (public)
 Ḥamza (Druze *dā'ī*) 127, 128
 Ḥanafī school of law 38–39, 52
 in Anatolia under Ottomans 263
 and divorce 363–364
 fatwā collections 173
 and *istiḥsān* 157
 and *Majalla* 175–176
 Marghinānī's *Hidāya* in India 177–179
 and Māturīdism 44, 73
 Ḥanafid branch of 'Alid family 109
 Ḥanbalī school of law 38–39, 52
 and authority of *ḥadīth* 465
 and historiography 449, 450
 and *istiḥsān* 157
 al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī breaks with 406
 on medical examination by opposite
 sex 661
 and Mu'tazila 8
 political theory 241
 and reform movement 14
 and *sīra* 231
see also under Qur'ān
ḥanīfa (pre-Islamic monotheism) 27
 Hanna, Nelly 352–353
 Ḥansaliyya 91
ḥarām (legal category of the forbidden)
 145–146
 Ḥaram al-Sharīf documents 339
 Harar 194
 harem, Ottoman royal 528
 Harī Har Parshād Sambhalī 441
 al-Ḥarīrī, Abū Muḥammad al-Qāsim al-Baṣrī
 409, 410, 732–733, 734, 738
 Harrān 395, 539
 Hārūn ibn Yaḥyā 487
 Hārūn al-Rashīd, 'Abbāsīd caliph
 114, 756
 Bihzād depicts in bathhouse 739, 740
 court physicians 571, 662
 and culture and learning 501, 569, 671
 Ḥarūriyya (name for Khārījites) 139
 Harvey, William 665
 Ḥasan II, Nizārī lord of Alamūt 130
 Ḥasan, Mīr 443
 al-Ḥasan ibn 'Alī 108, 225, 229

Index

- al-Ḥasan ibn ‘Alī al-Uṭrūsh (al-Nāṣir il’l-Ḥaqq) 133–134
- Ḥasan ibn ‘Arabshāh Naqqāsh 730
- al-Ḥasan ibn Mūsā 116
- al-Ḥasan ibn al-Qāsim, al-Dā’ī ila’l-Ḥaqq 133
- al-Ḥasan ibn Ṣāfi, Abū Nizār 399
- al-Ḥasan ibn Zayd, al-Dā’ī ila’l-Ḥaqq 133
- al-Ḥasan al-‘Askarī 114, 115, 137, 138
- al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī 46, 64
- followers 64–65, 67, 68
- Ḥasan Shawqī 439, 440
- Ḥasan-i Ṣabbāh 129, 130
- Ḥasanids 109, 229–230
- Ḥasanūyid Kurdish state 284
- Hāshim, Banū 107, 228, 229
- Hāshimī Bijāpūrī 440
- Hāshimiyya 110
- Hastings, Warren 177, 180
- Hātim, Shāh 435, 436, 443
- Hausa talismanic shirts 633
- Hawsam 134
- Ḥayāt al-Nisā Bēgam 442
- Ḥaydar ibn Junayd, Shaykh 119
- Ḥaydar Āmulī, Sayyid 119
- Ḥaydariyya 96
- al-Ḥaytham ibn ‘Adī 445–446
- Hebrew language 4, 57
- translation of scriptures into Arabic 206
- hedonism, defences of 9
- Hellenism *see* Greek culture
- Helmont, Johannes Baptista van 657
- helpers (*amṣār*) 28, 31
- Herat
- Ikhilāṣiyya complex 512
- literature and learning 4, 424, 427, 504, 512, 514, 515
- Persianate culture 1–2, 3
- scripts 429
- Sunnism 3
- visual arts 1–2, 732
- heresy 47, 71–72, 105, 396–397
- hermaphrodites 379
- hermeticism 566, 573, 579, 658–659
- see also under* alchemy; magic; medicine
- Hero of Alexandria 539, 586
- heroic literature 383–384, 412, 429, 680
- hijā’* (satire) genre 7, 357, 376, 387
- Hijāz
- agriculture 299
- art and architecture 683–684, 705
- dialect 671
- dietary law 753
- external contacts 147, 684
- Jews 21, 23, 26
- and Late Antique culture 147
- legal marginalisation 172
- precious metals 275
- trade 684
- women and culture 391–392
- see also* Mecca; Medina
- Hijāz railway 289
- hijra*
- of Prophet 22–23
- Zaydī doctrine 132, 135
- Hilāl, Banū 299, 311, 318
- hill farming 291, 292
- Hilla, Shī’ite school of 117–118, 119, 120, 122
- al-Ḥillī, Jamāl al-Dīn Ḥasan ibn Yūsuf 118, 249, 265
- Ḥimṣ 228
- Hind bint al-Hārith al-Firāsiyya 464
- Hindī language 436, 437, 438
- literature in 435, 436, 437
- Hindi/Indian literary style
- in Persian 416, 423
- in Urdu (*sabk-i hindī*) 440
- Hinduism
- Akbar’s syncretism with Islam 762–763
- caste system 194
- dhimmī* status 202
- Chūrid destruction of temples 724
- law in British India 177
- and Sufism 11, 12, 46, 101, 102, 218–219
- Urdu literature 442
- vegetarianism 762–763
- Hindvī language 435, 436, 437, 438
- Hipparchus 604–605
- Hippocratic medicine 538, 539, 657, 658
- Hishām, Umayyad caliph 229, 590
- Hishām I, Umayyad caliph of al-Andalus 591–592
- Hishām ibn al-Ḥakam 112
- history and historiography 6–7, 444–457
- ‘Abbāsīd types 447
- akhbār* 407, 409, 444–446, 465, 503
- in *amṣār* 445
- annalistic form 445–446, 447, 449–450, 452–453
- and ‘*asabiyya* (group consciousness) 452
- autobiographies of historians 471
- by *awlād al-nās* 450–451
- biography as branch of 459
- and cartography 613, 619
- ‘classical’ period 444–448
- compilations 677

Index

- and cosmology 400
 dynastic chronicle-cum-royal biography
 genre 448–449, 451, 456
 literary devices 451–452
majmū‘a form 452–453
 modern era 13
 non-Muslim material 491–492, 493–494
 obituaries in 448, 450, 451
 oral transmission 676
 patronage 447, 451, 455
 post-classical period 448–453
 readership 13, 452
 regionalism 450
 religious 36
 retrospective adjustments 23–24, 29, 31,
 472–473
 rhymed prose 449, 455
 sources, choice of 448
ta‘rīkh 444
 and *tafsīr* 36–37
 translations: from Arabic into Persian
 414, 454; into Ottoman Turkish
 493–494
 tribal negotiation of acceptable version
 472–473
 universal histories 445, 446, 449–450
 utility, and marketability 452
 of viziers 239–240
*see also individual historians, and under
 individual cities, regions, states and
 dynasties and Berbers; genealogy;
 ḥadīth; Ḥanbalī school of law; kuttāb;
 Mongols; Persian literature; Shī‘ism;
 storytelling; Turkish literature;
 ‘ulamā’; Urdu literature*
- ḥiyal* (legal device) 337
 hoards, coin 344
 Hodgson, Marshall 237–238, 250, 272,
 334–335, 530
 Hohenstaufen court of Sicily 559
 Holt, P. M. 332–333
 holy individuals 46, 693
 see also hagiography; saints
 homicide, law of 180
 homosexuality 377–378, 379, 396, 441
 al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī 406, 408
 Persian poetry 416–417, 422
 honey 756, 760
 honour, family 356–357, 375, 376
 horoscopes 592, 630
 horses 283, 284, 288–289, 315, 759
 horticulture 290, 302, 638
 hospitality 287
 hospitals 330, 657, 662, 663, 664
 endowment 281, 512, 569, 577, 661,
 662–663; *see also bimāristāns*
 hostel for travellers 512
 household staff 759
 houses 274, 282, 757
 Hujwīrī 467
 al-Ḥūla, lake 304
 human person 661
 see also body, human
Humāy and Humāyūn in a garden (miniature
 painting) 1–2, 15
 Humāyūn, Nāsir al-Dīn, Mughal emperor 101,
 269–270, 319–320, 456
 humoral theory 659, 667, 755, 759
 Ḥunayn ibn Iṣḥāq al-‘Ibādī 470, 538–539,
 573, 663
 circle of 536, 538–540
 al-Ḥurr al-‘Āmilī, Muḥammad 122
 Hürrem Sultana 369, 528, 633
 Ḥurūfiyya sect 99, 118
 al-Ḥusayn ibn ‘Alī 108, 109, 720
 Ḥusayn Bāyqarā 319
 al-Ḥusayn al-Mahdī li-Dīn Allāh 135
 Ḥusaynids 109, 113, 229
 Ḥusayniyya 135
 Hyderabad 122, 439, 442, 443
 hygiene, culinary 758–759
- ‘*ibādāt* / *mu‘amalāt* (ritual/legal) distinction
 144–145
 Ibādiyya 139, 140–141, 704, 708
 Iblīs (Satan) 643
 Ibn ‘Abbād, al-Ṣāhib 398, 406
 Ibn ‘Abd al-Barr al-Namarī 403
 Ibn ‘Abd al-Ḥakam 447
 Ibn ‘Abd Rabbih 2, 389, 402–403,
 407, 757
 Ibn ‘Abd al-Wahhāb 59, 89
 Ibn ‘Abd al-Zāhir 451
 Ibn ‘Abdūn 356, 377
 Ibn Abī al-Dunyā 744
 Ibn Abī Laylā 164
 Ibn Abī Ṭāhir Ṭayfūr 401, 403
 Ibn Abī Uṣaybi‘a 395, 621, 664
 Ibn Abī Zayd al-Qayrawānī 629
 Ibn al-‘Adīm 755 n11
 Ibn Aḥmad al-Majrīṭī, Pseudo- 649
 Ibn al-‘Ajami, Ṣadr al-Dīn Aḥmad 357
 Ibn al-Akfānī 603, 750
 Ibn al-‘Arabī, Muḥyī al-Dīn 57, 77, 81–83, 320,
 373, 411
 controversy over 5, 82–83, 501

Index

- Ibn al-‘Arabī, Muhyī al-Dīn (cont.)
 influence 12, 57, 81, 94, 119, 314; in South and South-East Asia 11, 101, 102, 103, 518
 oneness of being doctrine 57, 94, 101, 102, 103
 synthesis: of philosophy and religion 562; of Sufism and other ideologies 83, 121
 travels 5, 320, 508, 559–560
- Ibn ‘Arabshāh 5, 455
- Ibn Arfa’ Ra’s al-Andalusī 653
- Ibn al-‘Assāl family 208
- Ibn ‘Atā’ Allāh al-Iskandarī 53
- Ibn al-Athūr, ‘Izz al-Dīn 448
- Ibn Bābawayh (Shaykh al-Ṣadūq) 116
- Ibn Bājja 553–554, 558, 748–749
- Ibn Bakhtīshū’, Jabrā’īl 662, 663
- Ibn al-Balkhī 454
- Ibn al-Bannā’ al-Marrākushī, Abū al-‘Abbās Aḥmad ibn Muḥammad 580–581
- Ibn Bāq 356
- Ibn Bāšo 596
- Ibn al-Batanūnī 359
- Ibn Batrīq, Yahyā 536, 573
- Ibn Baṭṭa 242
- Ibn Baṭṭūṭa 5, 318, 319, 485
- Ibn Bayṭār 664
- Ibn Buluqqin, ruler of Granada 471
- Ibn Buṭlān, Abū al-Ḥasan 397–398, 500, 623
- Ibn Dāniyāl 10
- Ibn al-Dawādārī 452
- Ibn Durayd 675, 678
- Ibn Faḍl Allāh al-‘Umarī 450, 491, 613, 1147, 623
- Ibn Faḍlān 481, 490
- Ibn Falāḥ 118–119
- Ibn al-Fallūs, Ismā’īl ibn Ibrāhīm 580–581, 631
- Ibn al-Fāriḍ 55, 411
- Ibn Fāris 510
- Ibn Funduq 455
- Ibn al-Furāt 450
- Ibn Gabirol, Solomon 553
- Ibn García/Gharsiya 389
- Ibn Ghaybī (potter) 729
- Ibn Ghaybī, ‘Abd al-Qādir al-Marāghī 750
- Ibn al-Ḥā’im 602
- Ibn Ḥajar al-Asqalānī 4–5, 450, 528
- Ibn al-Ḥājib 411
- Ibn al-Ḥājī (Abū al-Barakāt al-Balaḥfī) 356, 364–365, 376, 524
- Ibn Ḥamdūn family 401
- Ibn al-Ḥanafīyya *see* Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥanafīyya
- Ibn Ḥanbal 165, 466, 469, 470, 534
- Ibn Ḥawqal 615, 616, 624
- Ibn Ḥawshab (Maṣṣūr al-Yaman) 124
- Ibn al-Haytham, Abū ‘Alī al-Ḥasan 9, 217, 582, 583, 631
 and mechanics 586
 and optics 584–585
 on Ptolemy’s physical consistency 603–606
 and *qibla* determination 594
- Ibn Ḥazm 9, 371–372, 394
- Ibn Hindū 510
- Ibn al-Ḥishī 508
- Ibn Ilyās 665–666
- Ibn Ishāq 445, 721
- Ibn Ismā’īl ibn al-Razzāz al-Jazarī 451, 586, 587, 736
- Ibn Iyās 452
- Ibn Jamā’a, Badr al-Dīn 253–254, 261, 262
- Ibn Jamā’a, ‘Izz al-Dīn 508–509
- Ibn al-Jawzī, Abū al-Faraj 245, 404, 408, 466–467, 470, 525–526
- Ibn al-Jawzī, Sibṭ 449
- Ibn Jubayr 485
- Ibn Juljul 621
- Ibn Jumay’ 571, 577–578
- Ibn al-Kalbī 445
- Ibn al-Kammād 602
- Ibn Kathīr 451
- Ibn Khaffīf 72
- Ibn Khaldūn, ‘Abd al-Raḥmān
 autobiography 471
 on crafts 727–728
 on elementary education 521, 522
 on *falsafā* and *kalām* 562
 on fields of knowledge 500–501
 history and influence 311, 452–453
 and al-Idrīsī 478
 on innovation 42
 on magic 640–641, 642, 644–645, 646, 649
 on music 743
 and oral culture 507
 and personal nature of transmission of knowledge 505
 political theory, typology of government 238–239
 on Prophetic medicine 660–661
 on Qur’ān 506, 660–661
 sources 491, 649
 Tīmūr, meeting with 471
 travel 5, 10–11
 on al-Ṭurtūshī 403–404
 on value of knowledge 498
- Ibn Khallikān 460, 575
- Ibn al-Khammār 539–540

Index

- Ibn al-Khaṭīb 376
 Ibn Khurradādhbih 478–479, 745
 Ibn al-Majdī, Shihāb al-Dīn 580–581
 Ibn Mammātī 340, 346–348
 Ibn Marzūq 452
 Ibn Māsawayh, Yūḥannā 538, 571, 663
 Ibn Maṣ'ūd of Shīrāz 666
 Ibn Ma'sūm 405
 Ibn al-Mubārak 65
 Ibn al-Munajjim family 401
 Ibn Mun'im 581
 Ibn al-Muqaffa' 34, 227, 230, 248, 386
 attempt to codify law 34, 40
 and cultural fusion 388
 Ibn Muqla 395–396, 711
 Ibn Muskūya *see* Miskawayh
 Ibn al-Muṭahhar al-Ḥillī, al-Ḥasan ibn Yūsuf
 118, 249, 265
 Ibn al-Nadīm, Abū al-Faraj 401, 500,
 711, 754
 on translation movement 536, 569, 746
 Ibn Nafīs 665
 Ibn Naḥmīas 610
 Ibn Nā'ima al-Ḥimṣī 536
 Ibn Naṣr Allāh, Ṣāliḥ 667
 Ibn Nūr Baksh al-Rāzī 666
 Ibn Nuṣayr al-Namīrī, Muḥammad 137, 138
 Ibn al-Qalānīsī 448
 Ibn Qayyim al-Jawziyya 366, 630, 660, 666
 Ibn al-Qiftī 398–399
 Ibn Qurra family 395–396, 574
 see also Thābit ibn Qurra
 Ibn Qutayba 230–231, 389–390, 403, 446, 466
 n26, 757
 Ibn al-Rāhib 208
 Ibn Razīn al-Tujībī 755 n11
 Ibn Riḍwān 470–471
 Ibn Rushd (Averroes) 555–560
 and Aristotle 501, 556–557, 558–559, 609
 classical rationalism 541
 and al-Ghazālī 556, 557
 and *kalām* 532
 legal training and method 555, 556
 metaphysics 558
 non-Muslim views of 217, 556, 559
 political theory 238
 Ibn Sab'īn 560
 Ibn Sa'd 465
 Ibn Sa'īd al-Maghribī 478, 490
 Ibn Sayyār al-Warrāq 754–755, 756
 Ibn Shaddād 449
 Ibn al-Shāṭir 606–607, 612
 Ibn Shuhayd 357
 Ibn Sīnā (Avicenna) 9, 548–552
 and Aristotle 501, 549
 astronomy and astrology 603
 autobiography 470, 548–549
 and court life 663
 education 510, 548–549, 664
 influence 555, 561, 562
 kalām 532, 561
 law 549
 mathematics 580
 mechanics 586
 medicine 510, 549, 663, 664, 666, 748
 non-Muslim views of 217
 musical theory 748
 ornamented manuscripts 623
 philosophy 77, 410, 540, 541, 548–552, 560;
 logic 501; metaphysics 549–552, 561,
 562; ontology 83
 Ibn Sūdūn 412, 413
 Ibn Taghrībirdī 329, 450
 Ibn al-Taḥḥān 394
 Ibn Taymiyya, Taqī al-Dīn 10, 59, 138, 254
 criticism of Sufism 54, 83, 89
 Ibn Ṭufayl 555
 Ibn Tūmart 404
 Ibn al-Ukhuwwa 758
 Ibn Umayl 652, 653
 Ibn Waḥshīyya 649, 757
 Ibn al-Wardī, Sirāj al-Dīn 'Umar ibn Muẓaffar
 616
 Ibn Wāṣil 449
 Ibn al-Zarqāllūh 596, 601–602
 Ibn Zur'a 539–540
 Ibrāhīm, shrine (*maqām*) of, Aleppo
 708–709
 Ibrāhīm 'Ādil Shāh II 439, 440
 Ibrāhīm ibn Adham 65
 Ibrāhīm ibn al-Mahdī 755, 756
 Ibrāhīm ibn Shahriyār al-Kāzarūnī 189
 Ibrāhīm ibn Sīnān 582, 583, 600
 Ibrāhīm ibn Ya'qūb al-Ṭurṭūshī 489
 Ibrāhīm al-Fazārī 591
 Ibrāhīm Mūteferriqa 432–433, 493, 636–638
 '*ibras* (revenue allotments) 346, 347
 al-Ibshīhī 400
 Iceland 187
 iconoclasm 42, 693
 idols 684, 686
 al-Idrīsī, Abū 'Abd Allāh Muḥammad ibn
 Muḥammad al-Sharīf 478, 490, 625,
 625 n202
 Ifrīqiya *see* Africa (North); Aghlabids; Berbers;
 Qayrawān

Index

- ijāza* (authority to transmit) 52, 507, 510–511, 515, 517, 676
 author's, for publication of book 506–507
 individuals lacking 510, 526
 mass public transmissions 525
 Sufi masters' 84
al-tadrīs wa'l-iftā', to issue legal opinions 510
 women's collection 527
 al-Ījī, 'Aḍud al-Dīn 533, 535, 561–562, 612
 al-'Ijlī 465 n24
ijmā' *see* consensus (scholarly)
ijmāl (summary tax registers) 321
ijtihād (independent reasoning) 40, 181
 eighteenth-century reform and 59
 medieval circumscription 52
 memory as possible basis 509
 neo- 183
 and *ra'y* 154, 157
 Shāfi'ī and 158
 Shī'ite 118; Zaydī 132, 134
 Ikhilāṣī, Mehmed 620
ikhtilāf (juristic disagreements) 173
 Ikhtiyār al-Dīn Ḥusayn al-Ḥusaynī 269
 Ikhwān al-Ṣafā' ('Brethren of Purity' or 'Sincere Brethren') 6, 9, 126, 545, 580, 747
 and magic 641, 642, 645, 647
ilhād (heresy) 105
 Ilkhānids
 architecture 708, 720–721
 ceramics 725
 east–west cultural mediation 491–492
 historiography 491–492
 land allocations 251
 manuscripts 576, 719, 721–722, 722, 726
 sciences 576, 577, 664
 Sufism and magic 633
 taxation 317
 transhumance 284–285
 al-'Umarī's description 491
 illuminationism 410–411, 562
 illustration *see* manuscripts; miniature painting; painting
'ilm/'ulūm see knowledge
'ilmiyye (Ottoman religious establishment) 56
iltizām tax-farming system 263
 Īltutmish, sultan of Delhi 247
 Ilyās ibn Ḥannā al-Mawṣilī 477
 'Imād al-Dīn al-Iṣfahānī (al-Kātib al-Iṣfahānī) 405, 410, 448–449, 471
 imamate
 'Abbāsīd period 109, 229–232
 'Alid succession 32, 109, 113, 132, 226, 229
 authority 32–33, 113, 240–245
 and caliphate 32, 34, 105, 240–245
 Fātimīd theory 574
 general deputyship/viceregency 265–266, 267
ḥujjat Allāh (proof of God) 113
 infallibility 113, 127
 Khārijite doctrine 139–140
 law and 34, 35, 241–245, 254
 Mamlūk theory 253–254
 Murji'ite concept 228
 Mu'tazilite theory 229–230, 240, 245
 Persian statecraft and 253
al-ridā (the agreed upon) 111–112, 228, 229
 Shī'ite concept 107, 108, 111, 113, 116–117;
 eligibility 32, 109; Imāmī 113, 229, 232, 249–250; Ismā'īlī 113, 127, 130, 232; and Jabirian cosmology 655; as *khalīfat Allāh* 226; reconciliation with kingship 267; schism with Sunnism 108, 226; similarity to Sunnī views 241–243; Zaydī 131–133, 136
 Sunnī theory 32, 34, 105, 240–245
 Umayyads claim authority 32–33
 worship, role in 45, 265
see also occultation *and under* Persian political theory; Saljūqs; traditionists
 Imāmiyya 109, 110–111, 229
 and imamate 113, 229, 232, 249–250
imaret (public kitchens) 369
 Imru' al-Qays (Lakhmid king) 669–670
 Imru' al-Qays (poet) 212
 Ināl al-Ajrūd, Mamlūk sultan 363
 In'ām al-Lāh Khān Yaqīn 443
 India
 agriculture 195, 292, 305, 754–755
 Alexander's legendary conquest 480
 astrology 566
 astronomy 590–591
 British rule 101, 174, 196, 305, 443, 639;
 College at Fort William, Calcutta 441, 443; Hastings Plan 177; law 177–182; rebellion (1857) 182
 conversion to Islam 48, 194–196, 200
 cultural synthesis with Islam 218
 description by Bābur 487
 fables 415
 in Islamic world-view 476
 magic-medicinal bowls 631
 mathematics 578, 579, 581, 588–589
 medicine 631, 634, 658, 666–667

Index

- miniaturists 319–320
 Mongol invasion 100
 numerals 578
 Ottoman historiography on 492
 Persian culture 122, 254, 268–269,
 319–320, 516; literary 422, 423, 436,
 437, 456–457, 469; political theory
 247, 254, 268–270; and Urdu
 literature 440
 pharmacology 569, 634
 sciences 504, 530, 569–570, 571–572, 576,
 634, 639
 Shī'ism 121, 122, 129, 130–131
 Sufism 11, 12, 85, 96, 99–102, 122, 437; *see also*
 under Hinduism
 trade with Egypt 318, 353
 translations into Arabic 569–570
 transport 13, 196
 travelogues describing Europe 483–484
 Turkish and Afghan regimes 48, 236, 312
 vegetarianism 762–763
see also individual states and regions, and
 Hinduism; Mughal empire; Urdu
 literature
 Indian Ocean 338, 476, 635–636
 maritime handbooks 489
 trade 6, 13, 318, 518
 Indian style, literary
 in Persian 416, 423
 in Urdu (*sabk-i hindī*) 440
 Indonesia 174, 305, 518, 633, 704
 Sufism 85, 102–104
 Indus Valley 292
 industry
 urban nature 277, 295, 303, 726–733
 see also individual industries and craftsmen
 inheritance 160, 175, 356, 501, 578
 and agriculture 290, 293
 to heirless persons 160, 161
 Qur'anic stipulations 150, 155, 578
 in *sharī'a* and classical *fiqh* 182–183
 al-Sirājīyya in British India 177–178
 and *waqfs* 513
 initiation rituals, Sufi 86, 519
 innovation (*bid'a*) 35, 39, 40, 105
 Ibādīs reject minarets as 704
 medieval and modern attitudes 16, 51, 56–59
 scholars' refutation 42, 500
 insanity *see* madness
 inscriptions 678, 693, 710–714
 architectural 678, 694, 700, 712; Dome of the
 Rock 673, 690, 692, 710
 on ceramics 678, 710–711, 712
 on coinage 678, 688–690, 710
 craftsmen's signatures 728–729
 graffiti 669, 674 n22, 674
 as key mode of art 678, 690, 693
 on metalwork 712, 714
 in mosaic 694
 pre-Islamic Arabian 444, 669–670
 scripts 690, 710–712; cursive 690; Kūfīc
 710–711, 711
 stucco 700, 710–711, 712, 730
 on textiles 678, 712–714, 734, 736
 Inshā' al-Lāh Khān Inshā 443
 instruments, scientific 613, 638–639
 astronomical 598, 606, 626; *see also*
 astrolabes
 intelligence service, Mughal 272
 interest rates 368
 inventories 367
iqīm (climes) 477–478, 479–480
iqṭā'āt (sing. *iqṭā'*, land allocations) 237–238,
 260, 286, 312, 345
 effect on agriculture 301, 302
 hereditary 301, 312
 Mamlūk sultanate 252–253
 Iran *see* Persia and individual regions and places
 Iraq
 agriculture 286, 297, 298
 Aramaic language 213
 Christianity 21, 207–208
 dietary law in 753
 educational–charitable complexes 512
 historiography 447
 Ismā'īliyya 123–124, 128
 Khārijism in 140
 legal subculture 172
 metalwork 731
 Mongol conquest 10
 nomad settlement by Ottomans in northern
 326–327
 Ottoman tax registers 320
 Qarāmiṭa 128
 Shī'ism 117, 119, 120, 122
 see also Mesopotamia and individual areas
 and places
 al-'Irāqī, Abū al-Qāsim 652, 653
 'Irāqī style of Persian poetry 416, 420–421
 'irfān mysticism 12
 irrigation 290, 292, 298, 299
 damage by nomads 300, 316–317
 over-irrigation 297
 state construction and repair 290, 295, 296
 see also qanāts; water-lifting devices; water
 rights

Index

- 'Īsā ibn Zayd ibn 'Alī 131
 Isabella, queen of Castile 310
 'Iṣāmī 456
 'Iṣat Efendi 638
 'Īsāwā *ṭarīqa* 92
 Iṣfahān 218, 279
 mosques: Great 696, 699, 700; Masjid-i Shāh
 281, 700
 palace 273, 735
 patronage 527, 574
 scholarship 120–121, 266–267, 562–563
 urban plan 277, 281, 282
 al-Isfizārī, Abū Ḥātim al-Muẓaffar ibn Ismā'īl
 586
 Iṣḥāq ibn Ḥunayn 538, 539, 573
 Ishmael 27
 Isidore of Seville 752
 Isis, cult of 214
 Iskandar, Raja of Perak 258
 Iskandar I Muda, sultan of Aceh 103,
 257, 258
 Iskandar II, sultan of Aceh 103
 Iskandar Dhu 'l-Qarnayn *see* Alexander the
 Great
 Iskandar Sulṭān, governor of Shīrāz 576–577,
 619, 624, 630
 Iṣlāḥ-i Zabān 443
 Islam 19–59
 by period: early 20–29; classical 29–48;
 medieval and early modern 48–59
 as submission 24, 29, 44
 see also individual aspects throughout index
 Islamisation *see* conversion to Islam
 Ismā'īl I, Shāh
 artists at court 319, 327
 campaigns 55, 119, 260–261, 319
 nature of kingship 264
 Shī'ism 55, 119–120, 262, 264, 269
 Ismā'īl ibn Bulbul, Abū Ṣāqir 572
 Ismā'īl ibn Ja'far al-Ṣādiq 114, 123
 Ismā'īl the Sāmānid; mausoleum at
 Bukhārā 720
 Ismā'īliyya 9–10, 106, 123–131
 da'wa 123–124, 126
 dawr al-satr, period of concealment
 123
 eschatology 125
 and *ijtihād* 118
 and imamate 113, 127, 130, 232
 in India 122
 and law 126–127
 Mahdism 123
 philosophical theology 126, 545
 pure, *al-ismā'īliyya al-khāliṣa* 123
 religious thought 125
 and Sufism 119
 see also Assassins; Fātimids; Nizāriyya;
 Qarāmiṭa; Ṭayyibiyya; *and under*
 Neoplatonism; Persia (Shī'ism);
 Yemen
 Isna 705
 isnād (pl. *asānīd*, chains of authorities)
 444, 460
 and authority 37–38, 460, 508, 510
 critical approach to 407, 508
 of *ḥadīth* 37–38, 464–465, 674
 oral origin 407
 two-tiered, classical/contemporary
 408–411
isrā' (Night Journey) 692
isrā'īliyyāt (Old Testament stories) 445
 Iṣṭakhr 276, 277
 al-Iṣṭakhrī 615, 623–624
 Istanbul 281, 428
 Byzantine period 313, 487
 craftsmen 11, 319, 327, 328
 early modern culture 11
 food supply 331, 762
 French Embassy Press 433
 Galata 322, 515
 immigration 322; forced 11, 319, 322,
 327, 328
 Jews 200, 310
 khul' divorces 364
 libraries 427, 636
 madrasa of Meḥmed the Conqueror
 664
 mosques and complexes: of Mihrimah
 Sultan 369; Süleymaniye 281, 702
 Ottoman conquest 259
 palaces 328, 735
 Palace School (*Enderun*) 523–524,
 634, 638
 Topkapı Saray 638, 724–725, 735, 762;
 circumcision room tiles 726, 727, 735;
 scroll of architectural drawings
 628–629, 718–719
 plagues 329–330
 sciences taught in 664
 Sufism 635
 women's loans to relatives 368
istiḥsān (juristic preference) 157
Istimāṭis (astrological work) 650
 Italy 330, 487, 634–635, 724
 trade 304, 315, 318
 see also Papacy; Venice

Index

- Ithnā ‘Asharīs *see* Twelvers
ivory carving 719, 736
Ivory Coast 200
iwāns 699–702
‘Iyād, al-Qāḍī 469
Izmir 330
Iznik ceramics 625, 725–726
- Jabal ‘Āmil 119, 120
Jabal Anṣāriyya 137
Jabal Sinjār 137
al-Jabartī, ‘Abd al-Raḥmān 13, 16, 472
Jābir ibn Ḥayyān and *corpus Jabirianum* 6, 649, 651, 652, 653, 654–657
Jabrā’īl ibn Bakhtīshū‘ 662, 663
Jacobite Church 573
Ja‘far, brother of al-Ḥasan al-‘Askarī 115
Ja‘far ibn Abī Yahyā, Shams al-Dīn 136
Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq 39, 111, 112–114, 123, 229, 652
Ja‘fari school of law 39, 112
Jahān Khātūn 421
Jahāngīr, Mughal emperor 269, 270, 271, 630
 religious policies 101, 122
Jahānshāh *see* Shāhjahān I
jāhiliyya (pre-Islamic Arabia), culture of 7
al-Jāhīz 230, 389, 390, 479, 480
 on misers 406, 410
 on music and musicians 393–394, 745
al-Jahshiyārī, Muḥammad ibn ‘Abdūs 239
Jainism 724
Jaipur; Jai Singh Observatory 606
Jakhanke people 516
Jalāl al-Dīn Makhdūm-i Jahāniyān 100
Jalālzāda, Muṣṭafā 263
jalīs (pl. *julasā*) 400–401
Jām 705
Jamāl al-Dīn al-Aqsarā’ī (Çelebi Efendi) 93
Jamāl al-Dīn Sāwī (or Sāvī) 95–96
al-Jamāliyya 93
Jāmī, ‘Abd al-Raḥmān 80–81, 422, 423, 529
Jamshīd (mythical figure) 227
Jānam, Shāh Burhān al-Dīn 439
Janissaries 11, 99, 201, 260, 428, 523
 see also devşirme
al-Jannābī, Abū Sa‘īd 124, 128
jannas (market gardens) 290, 302
Jarbādhqānī 454–455
jāriya see jawārī
Jārūdiyya 132
Jāṭs 195
Java 197, 256, 257, 633, 704
 Sufism 5, 12
- Jawāmi‘ al-Iskandarāniyyīn* (*Summaria Alexandrinorum*) 662
jawārī (women slave musicians) 391–394
al-Jawbarī, ‘Abd al-Raḥīm 653, 654
jawlaqiyya (term for Qalandariyya) 96
al-Jayhānī 490
al-Jazarī, Abū al-‘Izz ibn Ismā‘īl ibn al-Razzāz 451, 586, 587, 736
al-Jazīra 276, 286
al-Jazūlī, Muḥammad 90–91
Jazūliyya: 90–91
Jelālī rebellions 273
Jem Sultān 482
Jerusalem
 al-Aqṣā mosque 45, 690–691, 694
 ascension of Prophet 44, 692
 coinage 345
 in Crusades 49, 560
 Dome of the Rock: *see separate entry*
 gates by Muḥammad ibn al-Zayn 729
 Ḥaram al-Sharīf (Temple Mount) 44, 690–691; documents 339
 pilgrimage maps 617
 qibla 25
 Shāfi‘ī law school 363
 women’s loans to relatives 368
- Jews and Judaism
autonomy 205
under Christian rule 204, 206
clothing 204
commercial partnerships with Muslims 318
conversion to Islam 185, 187
 forcible 49, 200–201
cooking 755
culture 205, 206–207
and figurative art 686
Ibn Rushd’s authority 559
innkeepers in Arabic wine poetry 396
Islam and Judaism 19, 20, 24–25, 27, 29;
 debates, Muslim–Judaic–Christian 42; and law 20, 39, 41; possible sources of Qur’ān 209–210; syncretism 56–57
Khazar rulers convert to Judaism 312
languages and scripts 205, 206, 386–387, 675 n24
law 20, 39, 41; dietary 753
legal status under Islamic rule 202–204
literature 206, 386–387
Muḥammad and 24–25, 26
and political authority 23
pre-Islamic Arabian Judaism 21

Index

- Jews and Judaism (cont.)
 riots against 204
 sciences 573
 translation of scriptures into Arabic 206
see also ahl al-dhimmā; Cairo (Geniza documents); *and under* al-Andalus; Egypt; Ḥijāz; Istanbul; medicine; Ottoman empire; Qurʾān; Yemen
- al-Jibāl 124
- jihād*
 ‘Abbāsīd, against Byzantium 46, 61, 65, 229
 and Crusades 50–51, 251–252
 Delhi sultanate 247
 greater and lesser 54
ḥadīths on 50
 Khārijite, against other Muslims 140
 law and jurists and 50–51, 145 n6, 145
 Mamlūk sultanate 251–252
 modern revitalisation 59
 Prophet and: 225
 Sufis and 46, 54, 61, 64, 65
 ‘ulamā’ and 54
see also under Mongols
- jikrī* genre of poetry 437
- Jīlān *see* Gilān
- al-Jīlānī, ‘Abd al-Qādir 84
- al-Jildakī, Aydamur 652
- jizya* (poll-tax) 29–30, 203, 321
- Job of Edessa 571
- John Philoponus 539, 541–542, 554
- Johor, sultanate of 256, 257
- Jones, Sir William 177–178
- al-Jubbāʿī, Abū ‘Alī 534
- Judgement, Day of 22, 64
- judiciary *see* justice; *qāḍīs*
- Juliana Anicia 723
- al-Junayd, Abū al-Qāsim 46, 70–71, 94, 119
 and ‘sober’ strain of Sufism 70, 72, 84
- al-Junbulānī al-Jannān, ‘Abd Allāh 137
- Jurʾat, Qalandar Bakhsh 443
- jurisprudence *see* law and jurisprudence
- Jurjān 720
- al-Jurjānī, Sayyid Sharīf 504, 508, 514
- justice 158–162
 circle of 230
 God and 42, 43
 Malay sultanates 257
 rules of evidence 145, 181, 182
 Ṣafavid 268
sharīʿa courts 168–171; *see also qāḍīs*
 women and 358, 359, 362, 367
- see also* arbitration; negotiation; witness; *and under* Mamlūk sultanate; Mughal empire; Ottoman empire
- al-Juwaynī, al-Ḥaramayn 44, 243
- Juwaynī, Muḥammad 415, 455, 512
- al-Jūzjānī, Abū ‘Ubayd 455, 548, 608
- Ka’ba 27–28
 in pre-Islamic era 22, 684
qibla 593, 687
 Quraysh and 22, 684
 structure 593, 684, 693
- Kabungsuwan, *sarip* of Cotabato 257
- al-Kalābādihī, Abū Bakr 75
- kalām see* theology
- Kalīla wa Dimna* 227, 415
- Kamāl al-Dīn al-Fārisī 585
- kampong* (colony) 256
- Kano Chronicle 505
- kānūn* (cooking appliance) 758
- Kanz al-fawāʿid* (cookery manual) 755 n11
- Karagöz* shadow theatre 431
- Karaim Turkic language 429
- Karajaoglan 431
- al-Karajī, Abū Bakr 581, 582, 586, 587, 588–589
- al-Karakī, Shaykh ‘Alī 265–266, 267, 268
- karāmāt* (miracles) 88, 629
- Karbalā’ 108, 120, 617, 720
- al-Kārim, later Kārimī, group of ship-owners 318
- kārīz* (*qanāt*) systems 294, 316–317
- al-Karkhī, Ma’rūf 68
- Karlowitz, Treaty of 482–483
- Karrāmiyya 67, 72–73
- Kasgari Makmūt *see* al-Kāshgharī, Maḥmūd
- Kāshān 709–710, 730–731, 731
- Kashf al-mahjūb* (Sufi manual) 76, 415
- Kāshghar 424
- al-Kāshgharī, Maḥmūd 425, 427, 761
- al-Kāshī, Ghīyāth al-Dīn Jamshīd 4, 627, 628
- Kashmir 320
- Ka’ṭī, Maḥmūd 517
- Kātib Çelebi (Ḥājji Khalīfa) 431
 geography 486, 492, 493, 620, 636, 637
 history 453, 493–494
Kashf al-zunūn 632–633, 647–648, 651
- kātibs see* *kuttāb*
- Kay Kāvūs, Saljūq prince 313–314, 415
- Kaysān, Abū ‘Amra 109–110
- Kaysāniyya 106, 109–110, 111
- Kayseri 314, 366–367, 368
- Kazakhs 12
- Kāzarūn 189

Index

- Kedah, port law of 256
 Keling (Tamils); colony in Melaka 256
 Kemāl Pāshāzāda 262
 Kerak, Mamlūk province of 345
khavar see history and historiography (*akhbār*)
 al-Khafīr, Shams al-Dīn 607, 612
 Khalaf, Shaykh, of Jordan 472–473
 Khālid ibn Yazīd 651–652
 al-Khālid al-Barmakī 572
khalīfa (Sufi rank) 520
khalīfa see caliphate (designations)
 al-Khalīl ibn Aḥmad 587–588, 678
 al-Khalīlī 594
 Khaljī dynasty 268
khalwa (retreat) 83, 86, 95
 Khalwatiyya 91, 93–95
khānqāhs (Sufi lodges) 53, 54, 55, 84
 khans (inns) 275
kharaḥ (tax) 228
 al-Kharaqānī 72
 Khargird 700
Kharīdat al-‘ajā’ib wa-farīdat al-gharā’ib 616
 Khārijism 31, 51, 62, 139–141, 228, 229, 533
 and caliphal authority 31, 105, 139, 228
 in Ifrīqiya 31, 140, 229
 Kharrāqān 716, 717, 720
 al-Kharrāz, Abū Sa‘īd 71
 al-Khaṣībī, Abū ‘Abd Allāh al-Ḥusayn ibn
 Ḥamdān 137
khaṭīb (preacher) 45
 al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī 406, 407–408, 464, 675
 al-Khaṭīb al-Tibrīzī (Abū Zakariyyā’ Yahyā al-
 Tibrīzī) 406
 Khatmiyya (Mīrghāniyya) 92
 Khaṭṭābiyya 113
 Khawand Ashlūn 361
 Khawārij see Khārijism
khawāṣṣ see properties, occult specific
 Khazar principality 312
 Khāzin 518
 al-Khāzin, Abū Ja‘far 582
 al-Khāzinī, ‘Abd al-Raḥmān 349, 586
 Khirbat al-Mafjar 714, 716, 733
 Khiva 14
 Khojas 131
 Khunjī, Faḍlallāh Rūzbihān 261–262
 Khurāsān
 ‘Abbāsīd supporters 228, 229, 233,
 568–569
 client rulers 186
 education 10, 511, 512
 Islamic groups 67, 73, 112, 124, 131, 140, 228
 Sufi 73, 104
 scientific manuscript illustration 576
 see also individual places and Sāmānids
 Khurāsānī style of Persian poetry 416–420
 Khurramiyya or Khurramdīniyya 112
 Khusrau I Anūshīrwān, Sasanian ruler 239, 754,
 756
 Khusrau, Amīr 435, 437, 456
khutba (sermon at Friday prayers) 32, 34, 44–45,
 58, 148
 inclusion of ruler’s name 45, 229, 233, 360
 Khūzistān 118–119, 277, 304
 Khwāja Baqī Bi-‘llāh 101
 Khwāja Mīr Naṣīr 101
 Khwājū al-Kirmānī 2
 Khwādamīr 269–270, 455, 512
 Khwārazm 95, 246, 426
 al-Khwārizmī, Muḥammad ibn Mūsā 217, 500,
 510
 geography and cartography 618, 619
 mathematics 578–579, 581, 588–589
 prayer tables 595
 Zīj al-Sindhīnd 591, 592, 601
 kid 759
 Kīgātū Khān 467–468
 al-Kīkī 362
 al-Kindī, Abū Yūsuf Ya‘qūb ibn Ishāq 540–542
 al-‘Āmirī follows tradition 543–544
 and Aristotle 540, 541–542, 570–571, 573
 and Banū Mūsā 572–573, 579–580
 circle 562, 573
 and hermeticism 573, 579
 history of Egypt 447
 and Indian culture 569
 mathematics 579–580
 metaphysics 540–542
 and music 744, 746–747
 patronage 572
 philosophy 231–232, 540–544; harmonises
 Arabic and Greek thought 540,
 570–571, 573; integration with religion
 540, 541, 562, 570–571
 religious and political affiliations 573
 scientific writings 540
 on *tawḥīd* 540–541
 in translation movement 535–538, 570–571,
 573, 579–580
 see also under Neoplatonism;
 Neopythagoreanism
 kingship
 in art 685, 738
 and caliphate 233–240, 243
 and law 254
 literary images 401–402, 403

Index

- kingship (cont.)
 Mughal conception 237, 269, 270
 Ottoman conception 258–259, 263–264
 Persian conception 34, 213, 230–231, 233–235;
 al-‘Āmirī on 236; in India 268–270; in
 Malaysia 254–255; in post-Mongol
 theory 246–249; Ṣafavids and 264–265,
 266–268; Saljūqs adopt 237; and visual
 art 685
 and prophecy; theory of two powers 225,
 233–235, 236, 237, 247, 255, 268
 sacral 264–265, 266–268
 shepherd and flock image 248
 Sufi conception 246, 264
 in sultanate and patrimonial monarchies
 233–240
see also royalism, Islamic; women (royal);
and under Shī‘ism
- kinship structures 211, 285, 287, 288
 al-Kirmānī, Ḥamīd al-Dīn 126, 127
 al-Kisā‘ī 671
kishwar (Persian zoning system) 477–478
Kitāb al-ansāb (*Mafākhīr al-barbar*) 452
Kitāb al-īdāh fī al-khayr al-maḥd *see* *Liber de causis*
Kitāb al-tāj 230
 kitchens 369, 762
Kizilbāsh see *Qizilbāsh*
- knots and sympathetic magic 644–645, 646
 knowledge (*‘ilm*) 153–154, 497, 530, 564–565
 fields of 499–505; *see also* *adab*; rational
 sciences; traditional sciences
see also individual fields and education; oral
 culture (transmission of knowledge);
 scholarship
- Konya 79, 314, 427, 428, 467–468
 Köprülü Fāzil Aḥmed Paşa 637
 Köprülü Library 638
 Kösem (Ottoman royal concubine) 370
 Kubrawiyya 85, 99, 100, 104
 Kūfa
 ‘Abbāsīd headquarters 111–112
 ‘Alī’s base 107–108
 dietary law 753
 foundation 148, 228, 275, 298, 309
 historiography 445
 irrigation 298
 mosques 687
 al-Mukhtār’s control 109
 religious movements: Khārijism 140;
 Qarāmiṭa 123–124; Shī‘ism 109, 111, 114;
 Sufism and asceticism 65, 68;
 traditionism 132
 urban development 213, 279
- kufr* (unbelief) 105
 al-Kūhī, Abū Sahl Wjān ibn Rustam
 583, 586
 al-Kulaynī, Abū Ja‘far Muḥammad 113, 116
 Kunta people 92–93, 516
 al-Kūrānī, Ibrāhīm 103, 518
 Kurds 11, 284
Kutadgu bilig 250, 425, 427
 Kūtahya 428
 Kutāma Berbers 124, 289
kuttāb (sing. *kātib*, government secretaries) 227
 education 397, 590
 literary culture 384–386, 400, 446, 677;
 historiography 446, 450–451, 452
shu‘ūbiyya 389–390
- labour service 294, 295, 304
 lacquer, Chinese carved 726
 al-Lādhiqī, Muḥammad 750
 Lādhiqiyya (Laodicea) 137
 Lagardère, Vincent 290–291
 Lāhījān, Gilān 134
 Lāhījī, ‘Abd al-Razzāq 121, 267
 Lahore 435
 Lakhmids 147, 391, 669–670, 685
 Lāmi‘ī Çelebi 430
 land
 absentee landlords 293, 295, 296–297
 assignments of land or revenues: ‘Abbāsīd
 278; Ilkhānīd and Timūrid 251;
 Mughal 272; Ottoman 260, 286;
 Ṣafavid 266; *see also* *iqṭā‘āt*
 confiscations 290
 debt and creation of great estates 295
 inheritance 290, 293
 laws on 293
 nomads and 285–287, 296
 shift between agriculture and grazing
 286–287, 296
 state investment in improvement 286
 types of holding in al-Andalus 290–291
waqf holdings 301–302
 as wealth 286
see also irrigation; soils
- Langā, Daylamān 134
 language
 colloquial 412, 452, 674–675
dhimmī use 205; *see also under* Christians
 and Christianity; Jews and Judaism
 legal 165
 and nineteenth-century nationalism
 176–177
see also individual languages and dialects

Index

- Lashkār-i Bāzār 716, 733
- Late Antiquity
 agriculture 292
 Arabia in context of 147
 commercial practices 340
 Greek language 213
 and Islamic culture 217–218
 martyrism plan 719
 monotheism 213–214
 and natural world 213–216
 ornament 714–715, 716
- Latin language 189, 213, 592
 translations: from Arabic 217, 556, 653, 663;
 into Ottoman Turkish 636
see also alchemy (Latin tradition)
- law and jurisprudence 38–41, 142–183 n63, 500
 Anglo-Muhammadan 179–182
 appeals 161
 authority 165–167, 181; *ijāza* to issue legal
 opinions 510; sources of law 39,
 151–154; transfer to state 176, 177,
 182–183 n63
 books of *fiqh* 144–145, 170–174, 175–177, 677
 change 171–174
 civic role of jurists 167
 codification 34, 40, 56, 143, 176, 263
 consensus 154, 156
 customary 149, 150, 179, 362
dār al-islām/dār al-ḥarb distinction 475
 Druze abrogation of *sharīʿa* 127
 and dynastic rule 31–32
 evidence, rules of 145, 181, 182
 flexibility in application 168–169, 172
 formation of *sharīʿa* 147–158
istihsān (juristic preference) 157
 and Judaic law 20, 39, 41
 Malay dualistic, secular/religious 256, 257
 medieval regularisation of practice
 51–52
 in modern state 142–144, 171, 174–183 n63
 Mongol system 237
 and morality 142, 143–147
 oral culture 679
 in patrimonial-bureaucratic empires 273
 patronage by ruling dynasties 167–168
 pluralism 240, 251, 252
 and politics 31–32, 143, 166–168
 practice 168–171, 173–174; *see also* justice
 procedure 145, 176, 182
 rationalisation by Ottomans 56, 263–264
 reconciliation of religious and secular
 263–264
 review, judicial 161
- ritual/legal (*ʿibādāt/muʿamalāt*) distinction
 144–145
 Ṣafavid impact 260–263, 267, 268
 sedentarisation increases complexity 155
 Shīʿite 21, 112, 115, 116, 117, 182–183; *see also*
 Jaʿfarī school of law
 social context 143, 168
 specialists 5, 154–155, 159, 163, 174–175;
see also *muftīs*; *mulavis*
 stagnation, alleged 171
stare decisis principle 180–181
 Turkic and Turko-Mongolian 237, 250–251,
 258–259, 269
uṣūl al-fiqh (‘foundations’) 39, 165, 500; *ḥadīth*
 37, 38, 39, 155–156, 158; Qurʾān 37, 38, 39,
 149, 150, 151, 155; reason (*raʿy*) 39, 151, 153–154,
 153–154, 155, 156–158; *sunna* 39, 151–153,
 155–156
see also dietary law; *fatwā*; inheritance;
 justice; ritual/legal distinction; and
under individual states and agriculture;
ahl al-dhimma; *amṣār*; caliphate;
 children; colonial period; commerce;
 contracts; education; family; gifts;
 imamate; *jihād*; kingship; land; magic;
 marriage; sexuality; state; Sufism;
waqfs; women
- law, schools of (*madhāhib*) 38–39, 162–168
 authority in 165–167, 460, 463
 biographies 460, 463, 469
 definition in opposition to each other 8
 formation 164–167
 and *madrasa* 10
 in medieval period 51–52, 252
 multiple allegiances 163–164
 personal schools prior to 164–165
 spread reflects conversion to Islam 191
 Zaydī 133, 135
see also Ḥanafī; Ḥanbalī; Jaʿfarī; Mālikī; and
 Shāfiʿī school of law
- al-Lawḥ al-zumurrudī* (‘Emerald tablet’)
 649–650
- Layla and Majnūn 392, 427, 430–431
- leadership 30–35
see also caliphate; imamate; kingship;
 sultanate
- learning *see* education; scholarship; *ʿulamāʾ*
 and material on these under *individual
 disciplines and regions*
- leather 296, 739
- Lebanon
 Druzes 128
 Shīʿism 3, 119, 122

Index

- lectures, public 408
The legacy of Islam, second edition 336
 legend 6–7, 89, 453, 469
 legitimisation, dynastic 35, 247, 250, 251–252, 262, 574
 lenses 584, 600
 Leo X, Pope 487
 Leo Africanus 487, 517
 Leptis Magna 698
 lesbianism 378
 letter magic 630, 643, 646, 648–649, 651
 letter-writing 503, 529, 669, 675
 poetic letters 412
 see also *risāla* genre and under manuals
 letters of credit 337
Liber de causis (*Kitāb al-ūḍāḥ fī al-khayr al-maḥḍ*) 537, 542, 543
 libraries 678
 ‘Abbāsīd royal 677
 Bayt al-Hikma as 569
 in educational–charitable complexes 281, 512
 foreign books in 636, 638
 in *madrasas* 503, 611, 638
 Mamlūk 427
 Ottoman 281, 427, 636, 638
 Timbuktu 517
Libro de las cruces 592
 licences to transmit text see *ijāza*
licentia docendi 510
 linen 277
 linguistics see grammar, Arabic; philology
 literacy 412, 415, 529, 677
 literary culture 403, 668–681
 and administration 677
 Arabic language, oral and written forms 668, 675
 and authenticity 670
 complexity of written Arabic 670
 early Islamic 670–674
 explosion, late eighth-century 677–678
 and *ḥadīth* 406, 675, 676, 677
 and law 670, 679
 medieval period 678–681
 and memory 672, 673, 679
 modern Arabic 668–669
 pre-Islamic period 669–670
 prestige of writing in Islam 672
 reading aloud 678–679
 synthesis with oral in *adab* 407–408
 treaties 670
 Turkic 430, 432
 see also *adab*; graffiti; inscriptions; literacy; literature; Qurʾān (transcription); scripts; writing; and under bureaucrats
 literature 6–7
 oral and written 674–678
 see also Arabic literature; Persian literature; Turkish literature; Urdu literature and individual authors and genres
 livestock
 grazing 286–287, 292, 294, 296, 297, 316
 hill farming 291, 292
 mixed farming 291, 292, 296
 Mongols’ freeing of land for 316
 as nomads’ wealth 285, 286, 296
 in river basins 291
 slaughtering 759
 see also individual animals and livestock; nomads (pastoralism); transhumants
Le livre du cœur d’amours esprits 1
 loans 41, 295, 368, 369–370
 ‘localisation movement’ (*mahallileşme*) 431
 locusts 752, 753
 Lodī dynasty 268
 logic 501, 504, 546, 552–553
 Logos, Christ as 41
 looms, traditional 742
 Louis I the Pious, king of France 309
 Baptistère de Saint Louis 729
 Louis IX, king of France 348
 love, doctrine of divine 46
 love in literature
 secular poetry uses Sufi terminology 430–431
 Sufi metaphor 63, 65, 67–68, 373, 393, 430–431
 Turkish folk literature 431
 see also *ghazal*
 low-life themes in *adab* 406
 Lucas, Paul 639
 Lucknow 122, 442, 443, 525, 529
 Lu’lu’, Badr al-Dīn, prince of Mosul 738
 lunacy see madness
 Luṭfī Pāshā 262, 263
 luxury goods 684, 686, 693, 735–737
 foodstuffs 756
 al-Ma’arrī, Abū al-‘Alā’ 9, 399–400, 406, 407
mabsūṭāt (compensia, of *fiqh*) 170, 173
 macaronic verse (*rēkhta* genre) 436
 al-Madā’īnī 445
madhāhib (sing. *madhhab*) see law, schools of

Index

- madīh* (praise poetry) 387
 al-Madīna *see* Medina
 Madīnat al-Zahrā' 6, 279, 736
 Maḍmūn, Sharaf al-Dīn 436
maḍmūn 440, 441
 madness 169, 512
 literary figure of wise madman
 396–397, 398
 Madras 505
madrasas 52–53, 511–514
 architecture 280–281, 511, 513, 699–702
 corporate identity lacking 512–513
 in east 120, 281, 424, 515, 516, 664, 667
 East India Company, in Calcutta 516
 and education 52–53, 511–514, 524–525, 638
 endowments 10–11, 54, 513, 577, 664;
 documents, *waqfiyyas* 508, 513;
 incentives 513–514; Mamlūk royal 55,
 369, 500, 513, 577; by women 368–369,
 513, 526–527, 577
 and family networks 511, 574
 as feature of Islamic cities 5, 280, 282
 international provenance of scholars 508
 libraries 503, 611, 638
 mausolea in 511, 513
 Nizāmiyya 239, 511
 origin of name 511
 patronage *see* endowments *above*
 subjects studied: cartography 614; law 10,
 52, 170, 511, 512–513; magic 643;
 medicine 577, 664, 667; sciences 503,
 514, 574, 577, 611, 638, 664; Sufism 90
 and Sunnism 9–10, 512, 514
 women: barred from teaching or learning
 in 372, 527; *see also* endowments
 above
 see also under Aleppo; Baghdad; Cairo;
 Damascus; Ottoman empire
Mafūkhīr al-barbar 452
maghāzī 445
 al-Maghīlī, Muḥammad 504, 505
 Maghrib
 Arab settlement 309
 Banū Hilāl devastate agriculture 299
 cooking 755
 European diplomacy 481–482
 historiography 238–239, 452–453
 Ibn al-'Arabī in 320
 Ismā'īliyya 124
 Kūfic script 710
 madrasas 90
 music 748–749
 religious conservatism 51
 storytelling 680
 Sufism 85, 90–93, 374
 women: royal 360
 Sufi saints 374
 see also Berbers and individual states and
 dynasties
 al-Maghribī, Abū al-Qāsim 244
 magic 629–630, 640–651
 and alchemy 642–643
 and astrology 645, 649, 650
 bowls 576, 630–631
 context 642–645
 and cosmology 648–649
 four elements 640, 648–649
 geomancy 643
 ḥadīths on 644, 645, 647–648
 and hermeticism 648–650, 651
 incantation 647, 651
 and law 629, 640, 641–642
 literature of 649–650
 local traditions 629, 642, 645, 648
 madrasas teach 643
 and mathematics 630, 631–633; magic
 squares 587, 588, 631–633; *see also*
 number magic *below*
 and medicine 630–631, 645, 647–648, 650,
 658
 Muḥammad and 629, 643–645, 647
 and musical theory 649
 natural 651
 number magic 630, 640, 651
 and popular piety 642–643, 644–645
 and prophecy 643–644, 646
 prophylactic 630, 633; *see also* amulets
 rational explanations 645, 646, 650
 reality 640–641, 644, 645
 as science 629–630, 645
 stellar 640, 646
 sympathetic 644–645, 646, 647, 651
 women accused of using 361
 see also charms; knots; letter magic; and
 under Ibn Khaldūn; Ikhwān al-Ṣafā';
 medicine; mirrors; Neoplatonism;
 Ottoman empire; pharmacology;
 Qur'ān; Sufism; 'ulamā'
mahallīleşme (Turkish literary movement)
 431
 al-Māhānī, Abū 'Abd Allāh Muḥammad ibn
 'Isā 582
 al-Mahdī, 'Abbāsīd caliph 33, 112, 186, 278, 386,
 568–569
 al-Mahdī li-Dīn Allāh, Abū 'Abd Allāh
 Muḥammad 134

Index

- al-Mahdī li-Dīn Allāh, al-Ḥusayn 135
 Mahdism and the mahdī 110, 115, 118–119, 132, 228, 232
 Qarāmita and 124, 128
 Safavids and 120, 264
 see also al-Ḥasan al-‘Askarī; Ismā‘īl ibn Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq; Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq; Muḥammad ibn Ismā‘īl; al-Mukhtār ibn Abī ‘Ubayd al-Thaqafi
- al-Mahdiyya 619
 Maḥmūd II, Ottoman sultan 99
 Maḥmūd of Ghazna 236, 239, 312, 480
 Maḥmūd-i Pasikhānī 118
 Mahsati 421
 Maimonides, Moses 50, 206, 207
 maize 301
majālis (sing. *majlis*)
 cultural salons 392, 525, 572, 575, 583
 Shī‘ite ceremony 525
Majallat al-ahkām al-‘adliyya 175–177
 Majān canal, Marw 279
majlis *see* *majālis*
 Majlisī, Muḥammad Bāqir 121
 Majlisī, Muḥammad Taqī 122
majmū‘a form 452–453
majnūn (inspired poet), Prophet as 644
 Majnūn and Layla 392, 427, 430–431
 al-Majrīṭī, Abū al-Qāsim Maslama ibn Aḥmad 601
majshar type settlements 296, 302
 Ma‘jūncu-zāde Muṣṭafā Efendi 487–488
Majūs 202
 Makdisi, George 502–503, 504–505, 512–513
 Makhdūm-i Jahāniyān, Jalāl al-Dīn 100
makrūh (legal category of the disapproved) 146–147
 Malal 193
 Malāmatiyya 67, 72–73, 76, 96
 Malāmatiyya–Bayramiyya 96–97
 Malaysia
 Malay sultanates 254–258
 Sufism 12, 92, 255
 see also *individual states*
- Malazgirt (Manzikert), battle of 48, 313
 Mali 92–93, 193, 704
 see also Timbuktu
 al-Malik al-‘Ādil I, Ayyūbid sultan 280
 al-Malik al-Kāmil I, Ayyūbid sultan 503–504
 Mālik ibn Anas 38, 164, 165, 367
 Mālikī school of law 38–39, 52, 364, 376, 753
 on *jihād* 145 n6, 145
- Malpighi, Marcello 665
 Malta 487–488
 Maluku 256–257
 Ma‘marī 454
 Mamlūk sultanate 48, 251–254, 314–316
 ‘Abbāsīd caliphate in Cairo 49, 56, 246, 251, 253–254
 agriculture 286, 300, 304
 architecture 280
 astronomy and astrology 575, 629–630
 decorative arts: ceramics 725; inlaid brass 714, 719, 726; manuscripts 623, 712, 713
 Cairo as capital 279, 280
 culture 3–4, 10–11 *see also* *individual branches*
 diplomacy 491
 display, politics of 513
 encyclopaedias 10, 491
 historiography 10, 449–452
 iqṭā‘ system 252–253
 law and justice 252, 253–254
 literature 427
 medicine 577
 Ottoman conquest 289, 315–316
 patronage 3–4, 10–11, 451, 575, 577; arts 712, 713, 714, 719; *madrasas* and Sufi convents 55, 369, 512, 513, 526, 577; *waqf*s 252, 512
 Shī‘ite groups under 130, 137–138
 succession 314–315
 translations into Turkish from Arabic and Persian 3–4, 427
 women’s influence 361, 526
 see also *under* Mongols; Syria; ‘*ulamā*’
- mamlūks* (military slaves) 11, 48, 314–316
 in ‘Abbāsīd armies 233, 311–312
 areas of origin 11, 315
 code of conduct 522–523
 commanders’ rise to political power 314–315
 conversion to Islam 201
 education 522–523, 530
 homoeroticism 378
 horsemanship 315
 marriages 363, 365
 under Ottoman rule 315–316
 Persianate culture 3–4
 Turkish as lingua franca 315
 al-Ma‘mūn, ‘Abbāsīd caliph 570–571
 and ‘Alids 114, 229, 570
 army 233, 570
 coinage 229, 570
 cultural patronage 8–9, 570, 677

Index

- dream of Aristotle 569
 foreign policy 186, 570–571
 Khurāsānian power base 233, 570
 memorisation of Qurʾān 671
 Muʿtazila and *miḥna* 8, 34, 42, 230, 570
 sciences under 570, 598, 663
 and Shīʿism 114, 229, 570
 title of *khalīfat Allāh* 229
 and translation movement 8–9, 567–568, 570–571
 al-Maʾmūn II, Khwārazmshāh 402
manāqib (biography) 469
manāzil (levels of spiritual attainment) 67
 Mandu 99, 100
mandūb (legal category of the recommended) 146–147
 mango trees 293–294
 Mani 568–569
 Manichaeism 21, 214, 424
 Maʿnid dynasty 128
 Manjhan 218–219
 manliness (*muruwwa*) 7
 Mansā Mūsā, emperor of Mali 193, 345
 al-Manṣūr, Abū Jaʿfar, ʿAbbāsīd caliph 33, 34, 569, 570, 662
 Baghdad founded by 277–278, 591
 and Ibn al-Muqaffaʿ 34, 386
 and Sasanian tradition 567–568, 569
 and translation movement 535, 567–568, 569, 579, 591
 Manṣūr ibn Ilyā 626
 Manṣūr ibn Ishāq, Sāmānid prince 663
 al-Manṣūr biʾllāh al-Qāsim al-ʿIyānī 135
 al-Manṣūr biʾllāh al-Qāsim ibn Muḥammad 136
 Manṣūr al-Yaman (Ibn Ḥawshab) 124
 manuals
 administrative, Mughal 272
 culinary 755–756, 758, 761; *see also* Ibn Sayyār al-Warrāq
 learning-made-easy 406–407
 letter writing 272, 503
 market inspectors' 526, 758
 nautical 488–489
 practical geometry for craftsmen 718
 manufacturing
 Persian, in tenth/seventeenth century 12–13
 see also art and craft; craftsmen; industry
 manumission 32, 186, 191, 314–315, 365
 manuscripts
 from Byzantium 579, 621 n182, 723
 court workshops 575–576, 738
 cross-cultural influences 576, 726; *see also* miniature painting (Chinese influence; Persian style)
 frontispieces 622–623, 738
 giriḥ decoration 713, 716, 723
 maps 613, 614, 615, 623–624
 new urban clientele 732–733
 patronage 432, 624–625, 677, 732–733, 738–739
 portraiture 622–623, 624, 738
 production 2, 432, 575–576
 see also calligraphy; miniature painting; *and under* Byzantium; medicine; Qurʾān; sciences
 Manzikert (Malazgirt), battle of 48, 313
 maps *see* cartography
maqāma 409–410
 al-Maqqarī, Shihāb al-Dīn Abū al-ʿAbbās al-Tilimsānī 13, 748
 al-Maqrīzī 4–5, 450
maqṣūras (royal enclosures in mosques) 693–694, 699
 Marāgha 514, 720
 observatory 577, 602, 606–610
marāthī (elegies) 391
 Marcionism 568–569
 Mardāvīj ibn Ziyār 133
 al-Marghīnānī, Burhān al-Dīn 177–179
maʿrifā (gnosis) 67–68, 79
 Marīnids (Merinids) 4, 452
 maritime handbooks and charts 488–489, 617, 618–619
 market gardens (*janmas*) 290, 302
 markets
 inspectors (*muḥtasibs*) 352, 521; manuals 526, 758
 on outskirts of towns 303
 rural 296, 303
 urban 5, 274–276, 278, 282
 Marrakesh 282, 716
 marriage
 age at 365, 376
 charitable assistance for poor brides 370
 contraception in 366
 contracts 362–363, 370, 674 n22
 ḥajj in search of bride 5
 Islamic promotion 379
 law 32, 265, 362–364, 376
 mixed religions 197, 204–205
 mutʿa, temporary marriage 149
 physical mistreatment in 363, 364
 remarriage of widows 365
 social and economic parity in 365

Index

- marriage (cont.)
 women's loans to husbands 368
 of women without guardians 265
see also adultery; divorce; dowries;
 polygamy
- Marseilles 304, 318, 330
- marsiya* (Urdu poetry) 441
- Martel, Charles 309
- Martin of Troppau 491
- martyrdom
 Christian martyrs of Cordoba 188–189
 Islamic 108, 497–498
- martyria, Late Antique 719
- marvels, natural 215–216, 476, 479, 485,
 489, 490
 maps in works on 615, 623
- Marw 279, 289, 570
 battles: (1157) 284
 (1510) 261
 expansion by Muslims 228, 276, 279
 mausoleum of Sultan Sanjār 720
 urban fabric 276, 279, 280
- Marwānids of Mayyāfāriqīn, Kurdish 284
- Mashhad 114, 120, 200–201, 720
- masjid*; meaning of term 45
- Mas'ūd I, Ghaznavid ruler 454
- al-Mas'ūdī 9, 447
 on 'Abbāsids 402, 568–569, 756
 on non-Muslim world 479, 485–486,
 491, 492
- Matāwira 137
- materials science 215
- mathematics 4, 501–502, 578–589
 algebra–arithmetic–geometry relationships
 580–581, 582–583
analysis and *synthesis* 583–584
 application 580, 587–589, 627–629
 astrolabe used for computations 596
 and astrology 566
 astronomical tables, multi-entry 587
 Babylonian 579
 and cartography 613, 614–615
 Chinese 579
 early period 578–579
 Greek tradition 215, 579–580, 583; *see also*
 Euclid
 Indian 578, 579, 581, 588–589
 al-Kindī's and Banū Mūsā's views 573,
 579–580
 local traditions 578, 580
 Mesopotamian 579
 new branches 587–588
 numerals 578
- and optics 584–585
 pre-Islamic Arabian 578
 terminology 580
 translation from Greek 215, 539, 579–580
 woman mathematician, Bija Munajjima
 528–529
see also algebra; arithmetic; combinatorics;
 geometry; mechanics; numbers and
 number theory; trigonometry; *and*
under architecture; magic; medicine;
 Neoplatonism; Neopythagoreanism;
 Ottoman empire; Persia; philosophy;
 religion; Timūrid empire; Turks
- mathnawī* (poetic form) 79
 Persian 416, 418–419, 420–421, 422; Nizāmī
 420, 438–439
 Turkish 430–431; translations from Persian
 428–429
 Urdu 440
- Mattā ibn Yūnus, Abū Bishr 539, 544
- Māturīdism 44
- Mauritania 92, 516, 517, 522
- mausolea 280–281, 282, 720–721
 decoration 716, 717, 720, 726
 in educational–charitable complexes and
madrasas 511, 512, 513, 701–702, 726
- mawālī*
 'Abbāsīd supporters 229, 233
 bureaucrats 228, 384–386, 566
 clientship 186, 227
 and Khārījism 140
 legal status 228
 literary culture 384–386, 388
 Shī'ite 109, 110
see also conversion to Islam
- al-Māwardī, 'Alī ibn Muḥammad 9, 35, 241,
 243
- Mawlawiyya (Mevleviyya) 80, 314, 427, 745
- mawlid* (Prophet's birthday) 525
- al-Mawṣilī family 401
- Mayyāfāriqīn, Marwānids of 284
- mazālim* tribunals 162, 259
- Mazhar Jān-i Jānān, Mīrzā 436
- Mazyadids of Ḥilla 117–118
- meaning
 and eloquence 502–503
 and theme 440, 441
- measles 658–659
- meat 752
 cooking 752, 757–758, 759–760, 761, 762;
sikbāj 754, 756, 759
 hygiene in preparation 758–759
 sun-dried 752

Index

- Mecca
 culture 147, 391–392, 683–684
 dietary law 753
 education 508, 511, 518
 graffiti with variant Qurʾānic verses
 674 n22
 Jews 21
 Prophet in 20, 22–23, 26, 225, 275
 sanctuary 145–146; *see also* Kaʿba
 texts on advantages of 617
 trade and economy 22, 275, 684
 transport links with India 196
 mechanics 501, 573, 584, 586–587, 622
 Greek material 215, 580
 mediation *see* arbitration
 medicine 501, 657–667
 and alchemy 658–659, 667
 Alexandrian learning 571
 Arab folk medicine 659–660
 and Aristotelianism 657, 658
 astrology and disease aetiology 612
 autobiographies of physicians 470–471
 Christian practitioners 204, 206, 395,
 634–635, 662–663
 court physicians 50, 395, 574–575, 577,
 634–635, 662, 663
 dissection of human body 665
 divination used in 630
 education in 215, 510, 577, 638, 662, 664, 667;
 Ibn Sīnā's 510, 549, 664
 epistemology 658, 661
 European 634–635, 650
 Galenic system 501, 573, 657–658; criticism
 and abandonment 659, 665, 667;
 patronage 662–663; and Prophetic
 medicine 660, 661–662, 665–666;
 translations from Greek 538, 539, 573,
 586; *see also* humoral theory *below*
 ḥadīths on 660, 662, 666
 and hermeticism 566, 658, 661
 Hippocratic tradition 538, 539, 657, 658
 humoral theory 659, 667, 755, 759
 Ibn Sīnā 510, 549, 663, 664, 666, 748
 illustrations 622–623, 635, 723
 Indian 631, 634, 658, 666–667
 Islam's progressive attitude to 661, 662
 Jewish practitioners 50, 204, 206,
 634–635
 Maimonides 50, 206, 207
 literary references to physicians 395–396
 in *madrasas* 577, 664, 667
 and magic 630–631, 645, 647–648, 650, 658
 manuscripts 577–578, 622–623, 635, 723
 and mathematics 580
 mechanics and machines for healing 586
 motivation of physicians 661–662
 and music 661, 748
 and optics 584
 oral transmission 676
 Ottoman 428, 634–635, 638, 664, 667
 Paracelsian system 667
 patronage 569, 574–575, 577, 657, 661,
 662–663, 666–667
 Persian 428, 658, 662, 666
 Prophetic 658, 659–662; progressive nature
 661, 662; *see also under* Galenic system
 above
 Qurʾān: teachings on 660, 666
 verses invoked in healing 645, 647,
 660–661
 al-Rāzī 657, 658–659, 663
 rivalries expressed as religious difference
 573
 state regulation and licensing 577, 663
 Syrian ideas 658
 translations into Arabic 565; from
 Chinese 576; from Greek 215, 538,
 539, 571, 573, 586, 723; from Sanskrit
 569–570
 translations into Turkish, from Arabic and
 Persian 428
 women patients 376, 661
 women physicians 370, 661
 see also anatomy; *bīmāristāns*; hospitals;
 pharmacology
 Medina 23, 275, 617, 684, 753
 Constitution of 23, 225
 culture 147, 391–392, 683–684
 Jews 21, 23, 26
 mosque of the Prophet 45, 687–688, 694,
 695, 719, 723
 Prophet in 23–29, 275, 719
 meditation, Sufi 61, 62–63, 83–84, 86,
 94–95
 Mediterranean region
 agriculture 292, 293
 maritime cartography 488–489, 618–619
 shipping and trade 318, 352
 Meḥmed II the Conqueror, Ottoman emperor
 258–259, 263, 330, 724
 and education 515, 523, 664
 Meḥmed III, Ottoman emperor 430
 Meḥmed Aḡa 328
 Meḥmed ʿAshiq 490–491
 Mehmet Reis 619
 Melaka 254–256, 257, 258

Index

- memoirs 471–472
embassy (*sefāretnāme*) 432, 483
- memory 406, 507, 509, 672, 675–676
in oral culture 669
see also under education; *ḥadīth*; Qurʾān;
writing
- Menelaus 583, 594
- Mercator, Gerhard 492, 492 n90, 620, 636
- merchants 274
Egyptian 317–318
foreign, trading with Saljūqs of Rūm 314
Malay; collective rule 255–256, 257–258
manuscript illustrations of 732–733
patronage of arts and learning 10, 577, 732–733
practical application of mathematics 588
reading material 412
and Sufism 84
travel 317–319, 639
- Merinids (Marinids) 4, 452
- Mernissi, Fatima 671
- Merzifonlu Qara Muṣṭafā Paşa 637
- Mesopotamia, ancient
cooking 758
political model of flock and shepherd 231
science and mathematics 571–572, 579
- messianism
ʿAbbāsīd regnal titles 33
see also Mahdism and the mahdī
- metals
alchemy and 654
metallurgical chemistry 653, 654
precious 275, 349
- metalwork 728–729, 731–732
inlaid 731–732; *see also* basin, inlaid brass
inscriptions 712, 714
maps incised on 613, 614, 625, 625 n202
- metaphysics 501, 536–538, 655
see also under al-Fārābī; Ibn Rushd; Ibn Sīnā;
al-Kindī; Sufism
- metempsychosis (*tanāsukh*) 110, 127–128, 137, 138
- meteorology 584
- metres, poetic
Turkic syllabic 425, 426, 428
see also ʿarūd; mutaḳārib
- metrology 348–352
- Mevlevī order *see* Mawlawiyya
- microscopes 638, 639, 665
- ‘middle class’, urban 274, 732–733, 754, 756
see also merchants
- migrations 308–320
to cities from countryside 324, 325, 329
to countryside, to avoid plague 330–331
and demography 307
- Mamlūks 314–316
merchants 317–319
- Mongol 316–317; and westward, of refugees
10, 427–428
names as evidence 729, 731–732
in Ottoman empire: forcible 11, 319, 322, 325,
327–329; *see also* *devşirme*; of military
volunteers 324, 325
of scholars and other notables to Cairo 320
specialists 317–320, 327–329, 729, 731–732
state-controlled 319, 322, 325, 327–329
see also under al-Andalus; Arabs and Arabia;
conquests; craftsmen; Turks
- miḥna* 34, 42, 534, 540
- miḥrābs* 708–710
Cordoba 699, 708
earliest surviving, Damascus 694–696
Qayrawān 696–697, 708
stucco: inscriptions 710–711, 712, 730;
Iranian 708, 712; Omani 708,
709, 724
symbolism 696
tiled 709–710
Wāsiṭ mosque lacks 694
wooden 708–709
- Mihragān* (Persian festival) 137
- Mihri Khātūn 430
- Mihrimah Sultan 369
- milestones 690
- military-patronage state 245–254
- milk and milk products 753, 760
- mill-stones 752
- mināʿī* ware 730–731, 731
- minarets 694, 702, 704–708
local variation 696, 697–698, 697, 698, 704,
705–708
- minbars* 694, 696, 709, 716
- miniature painting 319–320, 432, 728
Chinese influence 14, 722, 726
at court 319–320, 575–576, 624–625, 738
enthronement scenes 738
Humāy and Humāyūn in a garden 1–2, 15
in India 319–320
modern period 14–16
of Muḥammad 721–723, 722
patronage 319, 423, 738
Persian style 1–2, 15, 319–320,
721–722, 722
portraiture 14, 622–623, 624, 738
and sciences 575–577, 613, 620–625,
626–627, 723
al-Wāsiṭī 733, 734
minting of coinage 341

Index

- miqāt* (religious timekeeping) 594–595
 Mīr, Muḥammad Taqī 434, 442
 Mīr Amman 443
 Mīr Athar 443
 Mīr Dāmād 121, 562–563
 Mīr Musavvir 728
 miracles 88, 195, 374, 467, 576, 629
mi'rāj (Ascension of Prophet) 44, 692
mi'rāj literature 722–723
 Mirān jī Shams al-Ushshāq, Shāh 439
 Mirdāsids 117
 Mīrghāniyya (Khatmiyya) 92
 Mirkhvand 456
 mirrors
 burning 580, 584, 585, 600
 magical 630, 633
 mirrors for princes 402, 403–404, 415, 454
 see also Kutadgu bilig; Sīr al-asrār
 Mīrzā Abū Ṭālib Khān 483–484
 Mīrzā Jān Shirāzī 516
 Mīrzā Maẓhar Jān-i Jānān 101
 misers, works on 406, 410
 Miskawayh 236–237, 248, 395, 402, 404,
 447, 454
 misogyny 358–359
miṣr *see amṣār*
 missionaries, Fātimid 126, 232
mithqāl (unit of weight) 349 n68, 350, 351
 Mithra, cult of 214
 Miyān Mīr 100
 modernity and *sharī'a* law 142–144, 171,
 174–183
 monarchy *see* kingship
 monasticism 42, 46, 53, 62, 396, 397
 educational role 397, 590
 Monconys, Balthasar de 639
 money 340–345
 of account 342, 345–348
 agriculture and monetisation 290, 299, 301
 qāḍīs and cases involving 160
 wealth in kind converted into 345, 347
 see also coinage; loans
 Mongols 7, 316–317
 absolutist rule 288
 and agriculture 286–287, 300, 316–317
 in Anatolia 314, 467–468
 armies 283, 284, 289, 316
 code of conduct 7
 coinage 349 n68
 conquests and rule: Baghdad 30, 49;
 China 319; Persia 10, 130, 249–251,
 286–287, 421
 conversion to Islam 49–50, 199
 historiography 455
 in India 100
 jihād against 51; Mamlūks' successes 10, 49,
 251–252
 law 237
 legitimation using astrology 250
 Rashīd al-Dīn's account 491
 refugees flee west from 10, 427–428
 see also Ilkhānids; Tīmūrid empire
Le Moniteur ottoman 433
 Monophysitism 21, 566
 monopolies 304, 305
 monotheism
 Islamic 22, 29, 41, 43
 pre-Islamic 27, 213–214
 monuments, commemorative 693
 see also mausolea; tombs
 Morienus (Byzantine hermit) 652
 Moriscos 310, 482
 Morocco 239, 362, 481–482
 cities 282
 culture 4, 517
 Jews 206–207
 Sufism 90–92, 320
 see also Almohads; Marrakesh
 mosaics 692, 693, 694, 714, 723
 Moses 36, 125, 643
 mosques 45, 280–281, 693–710
 African 704
 in *amṣār* 148, 276, 687
 architecture 693–710; codification of
 component parts 685, 686–688, 693;
 local influences 697–702, 704; nine-bay
 703–704; *qibla* wall 687; *see also* domes;
 īwāns; *maqṣūrās*; *miḥrābs*; minarets;
 minbars
 Christians convert into churches 45
 congregational, Great, or Friday 45,
 686–687; Friday prayers 24, 32, 44–45,
 359, 686
 in educational–charitable complexes
 281, 512
 endowments 54, 368–369
 as feature of Islamic city 5, 274–275,
 278, 282
 as indicator of urban growth 307
 in Indonesia 704
 learned circles in 154–155
 local 280, 687
 in *madrasas* 511
 medieval additions to established
 280
 and popular education 525

Index

- mosques (cont.)
 population estimates based on floor space 306
 women's visits 357, 359
see also under individual locations
- Mosul 276, 390, 573, 731–732, 738
- mourners, public 371
- Mshattā 714–715, 733
- mu'āmalāt* / *'ibādāt* (legal/ritual) distinction 144–145
- Mu'āwiya ibn Abī Sufyān, Umayyad caliph 108, 139, 226, 754
 ascent to throne 30, 108
Mu'awwidhatān see under Qur'ān
- al-Mu'ayyad bi'llāh Muḥammad 136
- al-Mu'ayyad bi'llāh Yaḥyā ibn Ḥamza 136
- al-Mu'azzam 'Īsā, Ayyūbid sultan 371
- mubāḥ* (legal category of the neutral) 146
- Mubārakiyya 123
- al-Mubashshir ibn Fātih 723
- mudāraba see commenda*
- mudhākara* (instructive conversation) 509
- Mufaḍḍal ibn Salāma 745
- Mufaḍḍalī-Nuṣayrī tradition 138
- al-Mufid, Shaykh 116, 242, 244
- muftīs* 170, 172, 173–174, 181, 263
see also mulavis
- Mughal empire 48, 272–273
 cartography 619
 cities 281
 cooking 761, 762–763
 court 271, 319–320, 437, 528, 574–575, 735, 761
 decorative arts 4, 319–320, 625–626
 historiography 456
 kingship 237, 269, 270
 land assignments 272
 law and justice 271, 272
 learning 500, 515–516, 528, 529, 634
 officials 271, 516
 patronage 577, 666–667, 721
 Persian culture 269, 270, 422, 423, 762
 political organisation 235, 270, 271–273
 religious reform 58
 sciences 504, 574–575, 577, 619
 Sufism 11, 99–102
 talismanic shirts 633
 Timūrid emperors 269
 Turko-Mongolian culture 271
 women of royal family 528, 529
zamindārs 272, 273
see also individual rulers
- al-Mughira ibn 'Abd al-Raḥmān III 736
- muhājirūn see Companions*
- Muḥakkima (name for Khārijites) 139
- Muḥammad, the Prophet 20, 29
 and 'Alī 107, 113
 Arabs' submission to 27, 225
 Ascension *see mi'rāj*
 authority 23, 24; legal 151, 152–153
 biography (*sīra*) 8, 150, 152, 210, 231, 445, 461, 468–469
 birthday 58, 525
 and call to prayer 24–25, 704
 and Christianity 24–25
 and conversion of foreign rulers 30
 death 28
 family *see ahl al-bayt*; 'Alids
 as inspired poet 644
 in Ismā'īlī thought 125
 in Mecca 20, 22–23, 26, 225, 275
 in Medina 23–29, 275, 719
 military expeditions (*maghāzī*) 445
 as model for Muslims 29, 152
 Night Journey (*isrā'*) 692
 Nuṣayrī beliefs on 138
 prophethood 21–22; as 'seal of the prophets' 28, 106–107
 revelations 21–23
 sermon at Friday prayers 32, 44
 spear of 719
 succession to 28, 106–107, 225–226; alleged designation 107, 112, 113
see also mi'rāj, and under genealogy; ḥadīth; ḥajj; imamate; Jews; jihād; magic; miniature painting; Quraysh; sexuality; sunna
- Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn 'Abd Allāh ibn al-'Abbās 110
- Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥanafīyya 108–109, 110
- Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan 497
- Muḥammad ibn Ibrāhīm al-Wazīr, Sayyid 136
- Muḥammad ibn 'Īsā al-Māhānī, Abū 'Abd Allāh 582
- Muḥammad ibn Ismā'īl 114, 123
 as *mahdī* 123, 124, 125, 128, 232
- Muḥammad ibn Jundab 137
- Muḥammad ibn Maḥmūd ibn Aḥmad Ṭūsī Salmānī 616
- Muḥammad ibn Maṣṣūr Mubārakshāh (Fakhr-i mudabbir) 247
- Muḥammad ibn Muḥammad al-Ḥārithī (Shaykh al-Mufid) 116, 242, 244
- Muḥammad ibn Muḥammad ibn Ḥasan Iṣfahānī 238 116
- Muḥammad ibn Nūr al-Khalwatī 93
- Muḥammad ibn Sālim al-Ḥifnī 94

Index

- Muḥammad ibn Zayd, al-Dā'ī ila'l-Ḥaqq 133
 Muḥammad ibn al-Zayn 729
 Muḥammad Akbar Arzānī 666–667
 Muḥammad Bahādur Khān 665
 Muḥammad al-Dībāj 114
 Muḥammad Ghawth of Gwalior 100–101
 Muḥammad Khān Shibānī 261
 Muḥammad al-Mahdī 115
 Muḥammad al-Murtaḍā li-Dīn Allāh 135
 Muḥammad al-Qā'im, Fāṭimid caliph 232
 Muḥammad Qulī Quṭb Shāh 437, 439
 Muḥammad Rabī' 481, 482
 Muḥammad-Shāhī branch of Nizāriyya 130–131
 Muḥammad Tughlaq 438
 Muḥammad Vaṣīf 417
 Muḥaqqiq al-Thānī (Shaykh 'Alī al-Karakī al-'Āmilī) 120
 Muḥarram 525
 tenth day (day of 'Āshūrā') 25, 108
 al-Muḥāsibī, al-Ḥārith 68–70, 471
 muḥdathūn ('moderns', poets) 386
 Muḥsin Fayḍ Kāshānī, Mullā 121
 muḥtasibs *see* markets (inspectors)
 al-Mu'izz, Fāṭimid caliph 232, 625 n202
 Muḥaddidiyya 101
 Muḥmal al-tavārikh va-al-qīṣaṣ 454
 al-Mukarram, Aḥmad, Ṣulayḥī ruler 360
 mukhannathūn (effeminate) 379, 392
 al-Mukhtār, Muḥammad ibn 'Isā 92
 al-Mukhtār ibn Abī 'Ubayd al-Thaqafī 108–109
 al-Mukhtār al-Kabīr, *sīdī*, and Mukhtāriyya 92–93
 mukhtaṣar (legal abridgement genre) 170–171
 Mukundaram 195
 mulavis (legal specialists) 177, 178, 179
 Mullā Ṣadrā (Ṣadr al-Dīn al-Shīrāzī) 12, 121, 516, 562–563
 Mullā Shāh Badakhshī 100
 Multān 100
 Mumtāz-i Maḥal 721
 munādīs (court officers) 159–160, 161
 al-Munajjim, Banū 572, 573
 Munajjima, Bija 528–529
 Munayya bint Maymūn 374
 munāzara (formal disputation) 509–510
 Müneccimek Meḥmed Efendi 635
 Münejjimbashi 492
 munya (aristocratic estate) 290, 302
 al-Muqaddasī, Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad ibn Aḥmad 480, 485–486, 615, 751
 muqāraḍa *see* commenda
 muqarnas vaulting 3, 4, 701, 716–719, 735
 al-Muqtadir, 'Abbāsid caliph 481, 662–663
 al-Muqtanā, Bahā' al-Dīn 127
 Murād II, Ottoman sultan 429
 Murād III, Ottoman sultan 94, 430, 486
 Murād al-Lāh Sambhalī, Shāh 441, 443
 Murji'ite movement 228, 533
 murī (condiment) 760, 761
 Murshidabad 443
 al-Murtaḍā 'Alam al-Hudā, Sharīf 117, 118, 244–245
 muruwwa (manliness) 7
 Mūsā, Banū 572, 573, 579–580, 586
 Mūsā al-Kāzīm 114, 120, 264
 Mūsā al-Yūsufī 452
 muṣannif (author–jurist) 173–174
 Muṣḥafī, Ghulām Hamadānī 435, 443
 Musha'sha' movement 118–119
 mushāwars (legal specialists) 159
 music 743–750
 in Deccan 439
 Greek legacy 580, 746, 750
 modes 745, 746–747, 749, 750
 nefes 428
 notation 744, 747, 750
 scales 744, 749
 science of 746
 theory 501, 580, 649, 746, 747–748, 749–750
 translations: Arabic and Persian to Turkish 428; Greek to Arabic 746
 see also under al-Andalus; medicine; Ottoman empire; Persia; philosophy; slaves and slavery; Sufism; women
 Muslim ibn al-Ḥajjāj 38, 675–676
 Mussalman Waqf Validating Act (1913) 180
 al-Mustaḍī' 245
 Muṣṭafā 'Ālī 492
 Muṣṭafā Feyḍī 635
 Muṣṭafā Rāsiḥ 483
 al-Musta'li bi'llāh, Fāṭimid caliph 128–129
 Musta'liyya 128–129
 al-Mustanṣir, Fāṭimid caliph 128, 129, 311, 664
 Mustawfī al-Qazwīnī, Ḥamdallāh 476
 mustawqīd (cooking contrivance) 758
 mut'a (temporary marriage) 149
 al-Mu'taḍid, 'Abbāsid caliph 447
 Mutafarriqa, Ibrāhīm *see* Mūteferriqa, Ibrāhīm
 al-Mutanabbī 9, 387, 400, 406, 675
 mutaḡarīb metre 414
 mutārahāt (poetic letters) 412
 Muṭarrif ibn Shihāb 135

Index

- Muṭarrifiyya 135
 al-Mu'taṣim, 'Abbāsīd caliph 278, 387–388, 663
 al-Mutawakkil, 'Abbāsīd caliph 233, 278, 570
 court physicians 395, 663
 religious policies 34, 204
 Mu'tazila 8, 9, 42–43, 51, 533–534, 568
 five principles 533
 and imamate 229–230, 240, 245
 al-Kindī and 540
 al-Ma'mūn and 8, 230, 570
 and Shī'ism 111, 116–117, 121; Zaydī 132, 133, 134, 135, 136
 see also *miḥna*; Qur'ān (createdness); and under Baghdad; Būyids; imamate
 al-Mu'tazz, 'Abbāsīd caliph 395
 Müteferriqa, İbrāhīm 432–433, 493, 636–638
 al-Muttaqī, 'Abbāsīd caliph 401
 al-Muṭṭawwīfī, Tamīm ibn Baḥr 490
 mutton 759
 Muwahḥidūn (Druzes) 127–128
muwaqqits (astronomers) 575, 577, 595, 629–630
muwashshah (poetic form) 394, 409, 749
 Muẓaffar Shāh, sultan of Melaka 254
 Muẓaffarids 252, 625–626, 630
 Myriokephalon, battle of 313
 mysticism
 erotic 63, 65, 67–68, 373
 '*irfān*' style 12
 verse 416, 419, 428–429
 women; Bija Munajjima 529
 see also Sufism and under Christianity
- Nabataean agriculture* 649
Nabataean scripts 669–670
 Nābī 431
 al-Nābulusī 340, 347–348
nadīm (pl. *nudamā*), court companions of ruler) 4, 400–401
 Nāfi' ibn al-Azraq al-Ḥanafī 140
 al-Nafs al-Zakiyya, Muḥammad ibn 'Abd Allāh 112, 229–230
 Nahr Ḥabūr area 304
 Na'imā 453
 Nā'in 708
 Najaf 120
 al-Najāshī, Aḥmad ibn 'Alī 117
 Najdiyya sect 140
 Nājī, Muḥammad Shākir 436
 Najm al-Dīn Rāzī 246
 Namāra inscription 669–670
 names
 ahl al-dhimma not to use Arab 203
 evidence of conversion 189–192
 evidence on migrations 729, 731–732
 genealogical information 461
 Most Beautiful, of God: 648, 651
 public naming of women 357, 376
 Namiriyya 136
 Napoleon I, emperor of France 472
naqd al-shi'r (poetic criticism) 388
 Naqqāsh, Ḥasan ibn 'Arabshāh 709–710
 Naqsh-i Rustam rock reliefs 685
 Naqshband, Bahā' al-Dīn 80
 Naqshbandiyya 80–81, 85–86, 99, 102
 asceticism 102
 geographical extent 85, 95, 103, 104, 520; in India 99, 101, 102
 waḥdat al-shuhūd doctrine 101, 102
al-nār (cooking appliance) 758
 Narbonne 309
 al-Nasafi, Muḥammad ibn Aḥmad 126
 al-Nāshī', Abu 'l-'Abbās 502
Naṣīhat al-mulūk 233
 al-Nāṣir li-Dīn Allāh, 'Abbāsīd caliph 241
 Naṣir al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī 267
 al-Nāṣir li'l-Ḥaqq (al-Ḥasan ibn 'Alī al-Uṭrūsh) 133–134
 al-Nāṣir al-Ḥasan, Mamlūk sultan 512, 701–702, 726
 al-Nāṣir Muḥammad ibn Qalāwūn, Mamlūk sultan 361, 371
 inlaid brass basin of 712, 714, 719, 726
 Nāṣir-i Khusraw 126, 415–416, 420
 Nāṣiri Sufi brotherhoods 517
 Nāṣiriyya (Zaydī faction) 134
 Naṣr ibn Muzāḥim 445
 Naṣr Allāh Munshī 246–247, 415
 Naṣrid kingdom see Granada
naṣṣ see designation of successor
 Nasūhī Meḥmed and al-Nasūhiyya 94
 Naṭanzī 455
 nationalism, nineteenth-century 176–177
 natural philosophy 552–554, 584–585, 586, 601, 603
 natural world 209–221
 in Arab culture 209–213
 in cultures outside Hellenistic ecumene 218–221
 European views 217–218
 in Greek culture 213–216, 217–218, 220–221
 illustrated books on 615, 622
 medieval views 217–220

Index

- pastoral order 209–213, 217–218
 translation movement and 215, 216
see also under agriculture; Qurʾān
- nature cults, Saljūq 313
- natures, cosmological system of 649, 655, 656–657
- Naval Museum, Ottoman 638
- navigation 488–489, 614, 618–619
- Nawāʿī, Mīr ʿAlī Shīr 4, 427, 430, 512
- Nawbakht, Banū 116, 572
- Nawrūz* festival 137
- Nazhūn bint al-Qalāʿī 373
- Nazīr Akbarābādī 443
- Nedīm 431–432
- nefes* (poetic genre) 428
- Nefī 431
- negara* (theatre-state), Geertz’s model of 255
- negotiation, informal out-of-court 168
- Nemesius 539
- Neoplatonism
 Ammonius’ school at Alexandria 551
 Druzes and 127–128
 al-Fārābī and 547
 and Fāṭimid theory of imamate 574
 Ibn Bājja influenced by 554
 Ismāʿīliyya and 126, 545; Ikhwān al-Ṣafā’ 126, 641, 645
 al-Kindī and 540, 541–543, 570–571, 573, 579
 and magic 648–649
 and mathematics 580
 and political theory 237
 and Sufism 83
 Suhrawardī and 237, 560–561
 translations 536–538
- Neopythagoreanism 539, 648–649
 al-Kindī and 570–571, 579, 746
 mathematics 539, 579, 580–581
- Nesīmī 428, 430
- Nestorianism 21, 566, 568, 571, 573
- Netherlands 174
- networks
adab and personal 404–405
 Sufi international 520
see also under family; scholarship
- new learning 406–413
- newspapers 433
- Newton, Isaac 531, 650, 651
- Nicene Creed 41
- Nicomachus of Gerasa 536, 579, 580, 631
- Nigeria 527–528, 530
- Night Journey (*isrāʾ*) 692
- night scenes in art 1
- Nikephoros Phokas, Byzantine emperor 723
- Nile Valley and Delta 304, 358
- Niʾmatullāhiyya 104
- al-Nīsābūrī 397
- nisba* 729, 731–732
- Nishāpūr 67, 218, 277, 279, 678
 architecture 627, 716
 sack by Ghuzz/Oğuz 313, 316
- Nishāpūrī 454
- Nizām of Burhānpūr, Shaykh 272
- Nizām-Shāhī state 122
- Nizām al-Dīn, Mullā 516
- Nizām al-Dīn Awliyā’ 99–100
- Nizām al-Dīn al-Nīsābūrī 612–613
- Nizām al-Mulq 243, 404, 699
 founds Nizāmiyya *madrasas* 239, 511
Siyāsatnāma 236, 239, 240, 287, 415, 454
- Nizāmī, Abū Muḥammad 420, 422, 429, 430
 illustrated copies 613, 614, 624, 739, 740
- Nizāmī, Fakhr-i Dīn 438–439
- Nizāmiyya courts 175, 176
- Nizāmiyya religious colleges 76–77, 239, 511
- Nizāmiyya schools, Ottoman 176–177
- Nizāriyya 119, 127, 128–131, 134, 137
- Nizwā (al-ʿAqr) 708, 709
- Noah 125
- nomads 283–289
 Arab tribes 285
 conversion to Islam 186–187
 crafts 739, 742
 geographical regions 217–218
 leadership 250–251, 287–288
 migrations 308–309; *see also* transhumants
below
 pastoralism 209–213, 217–218, 283–284, 286–287
 patrimonialism 265, 269
 sedentarisation 155, 298, 301, 309, 326–327
 and settled populations 286, 295–296, 297
 transhumants 275, 284–285, 297
 and wealth 285–287
see also Bedouin *and under* agriculture;
 armies; land; Persia; succession; trade;
 Turks
- non-Muslim world (*dār al-ḥarb*) 50–51, 474–494
 accounts lack authority 474, 485–486, 487, 494
 boundaries 475–477
 captivity narratives 487–488
 in Islamic world-view: 50–51, 475–477
 juridical definition 475
 maritime handbooks and charts 488–489
 nature of Muslim accounts 474–475

Index

- non-Muslim world (*dār al-ḥarb*) (cont.)
 non-Muslim source material 491–494
 oral transmission of knowledge 474
 Ptolemaic tradition 477–484
 synthetic descriptions 489–491
 travellers' accounts 484–487
see also under diplomacy; geography; history
 and historiography; Ottoman empire
- noria (water-wheel) 294
 Norman kingdom of Sicily 49, 478
nūba (musical form) 749
 Nukkārī sub-sect of Ibādīyya 140
 al-Nu'mān ibn Muḥammad, al-Qāḍī Abū
 Ḥanīfa 113, 126–127
 numbers and number theory 566,
 581, 649
abjad system 456
 amicable numbers 581, 631–633
 Indian numerals in Arabic documents 578
 magic squares 587, 588, 631–633
 magical properties 630, 640, 651
- Nuḡṭawī movement 118
 Nūr Allāh Shūshṭārī 122
 Nūr al-Dīn ibn Zangī 54, 449, 631
bīmāristān, Damascus 701, 701, 718
 Nūr al-Dīn Khāqānī, Qāḍī 271
 Nūr-i Jahān 269
 Nūrbakhshīyya 104
 al-Nūrī, Abū al-Ḥusayn 71
 Nuṣayriyya 136–139
 Nuṣratī Bījāpūrī, Mullā 440
 nuts 760
 al-Nuwayrī 400, 450, 452
- oath of allegiance (*bay'a*) 240
 obituaries 448, 450, 451
 observatories 512, 515, 577, 606, 627
 Marāgha 577, 602, 606–610
 occasionalism, Ash'arite doctrine of
 534–535
 occult sciences 576, 640–657
 and medicine 657–659
see also alchemy; divination; magic
 occultation (*ghayba*) of imams 110, 115,
 249–250
 general deputyship/viceregency during
 265–266, 267
 al-Ḥākim 127, 128
 and Jabirian cosmology 655–656
 lesser and greater 115
 Muḥammad al-Mahdī 115
 twelfth imam 47
 Zaydī rejection 132
- occupations *see individual occupations*,
 craftsmen, and *under ahl al-dhimma*;
 women
- officials *see* administration; bureaucrats;
kuttāb; viziers
- Oğuz Turks 313, 316, 429
 language 426, 427, 429
- olives and olive oil 290, 292, 753, 760
 Öljaytū, Ilkhānid ruler 720–721
- Oman
mīhrābs 708, 709, 724
 religious communities 139, 141
 trade with China 724
- omens 589, 592
 Ömer the Cutler ('Umar Sikkīnī) 96–97
 oneiromancy 214, 428
- oneness
 of being (*waḥdat al-wujūd*) 57, 79, 82–83, 94,
 101, 102, 103
 of God 20, 26
 of witnessing (*waḥdat al-shuhūd*) 101, 102
- ophthalmology 663
 optics 502, 573, 580, 584–585, 638
opus sectile 693
- oral culture 407, 506–507, 668–681
adab and 407–409
 authority in 37, 407, 676–677
 early Islam 670–674
 and literature 674–678
 longevity in Egypt 674, 679
 medieval period 678–681
 modern spontaneous production in
 classical form 472–473
 Persian prose romances 415
 pre-Islamic period 669–670
 Prophetic *sunna* in 152
 and publication of books 506–507
 reading aloud 678–679
 transmission of knowledge 407, 474,
 506–507, 676
 writing viewed with scepticism 507
see also memory; preachers, popular;
 storytelling; and *under ḥadīth*; law;
 Qur'ān; Sufism; Turkish literature
- oral and written languages, Arabic 668–669, 675
- orang kaya* class 255–256, 257
- oratory 503
- orientalism 105–106, 144, 177–178
- Orkhon inscriptions 250, 424
- ornament 714–719
ablaq 702
 arabesques 3
 bevelled style 715

Index

- geometric 682, 708–709, 714, 715–719, 741;
 giriḥ 715–716, 718, 723
- importance of textual content 678, 690, 693
- Late Antique influences 714–715, 716
- Sāmarrā' 715
- vegetal 682, 692, 708, 714, 719
 see also arabesques; inscriptions
- orphans 160, 161, 512
- orta oyunu* folk theatre 431
- Ortelius, Abraham Ortel 492
- Osama bin Ladin 50–51
- 'Osmān ibn 'Abdūlmennān 493 n93
- 'Osmān Aḡa of Temeshvar 488
- Ottoman empire 258–261, 272–273
 adab 412–413, 515
 administration 56, 93, 260, 263, 264, 365;
 centralisation 273, 634, 703; data on
 demography and migrations 320–324;
 scientific officials 634, 635; training 484,
 515
 agriculture 200
 architecture 4, 328, 702–703
 armed services 174, 289, 324, 325, 328, 634;
 conquests 48, 259, 289, 327; eighteenth-
 century reforms 638; *sipāhī* cavalry 260; *see also*
 260; *see also* Janissaries
 astrology 634, 635
 astronomy 428, 634, 635
 book production 432, 623
 cartography 613–614, 618–619, 620
 foreign knowledge and reform 492 n90,
 492–493, 634, 635–637, 638
 Christians 322, 432; *see also devşirme*
 cities 281
 cooking 761, 762
 court 431, 523, 574–575, 634–635; *see also*
 Istanbul (palaces)
 craft organisation 728
 decline 13, 58
 demography 320–325
 diplomacy 482–483
 Druzes under 128
 education 500, 514–515, 516, 664; military
 schools 638; modern civil 175, 176–177,
 638, 639; Palace School 523–524, 634,
 638
 geography 428, 635–637
 and Habsburg empire 326, 486
 harem 528
 historiography 453
 Islamic establishment controlled by 55–56
 Istanbul becomes capital 259, 428
 Jews 310, 322, 432
 justice 56, 175, 235, 259, 262–263, 358; *maẓālim*
 tribunals 162, 259; Niẓāmiyya courts
 175, 176
 land assignments 260, 286
 law 56, 174–177, 179, 258–259, 260–264, 515
 legitimation 262
 literature 3, 428–429, 430–433, 459
 madrasas 514–515, 577, 638, 664
 magic 630, 633
 and Mamlūks 289, 315–316
 mathematics 623, 634
 medicine 428, 634–635, 638, 664, 667
 mosques 228, 281, 702–703
 music 428, 744
 newspapers 433
 and non-Muslim world 48, 174, 431,
 482–483; knowledge from 492–494,
 635–637
 origins 48
 pan-Islamism 637
 peasant revolts rare 325
 political organisation 258–261, 272–273
 printing 432–433, 493
 reforms 58, 493, 635–639
 scholarly culture 55–56, 264, 320, 633–634
 sciences 515, 574–575, 633–634, 634–639;
 education in 428, 515, 577, 638, 664
 and Shi'ite groups 130, 138, 260–263
 social stratification system 259–260
 Sufism 12, 93–99
 sultanate 3, 56, 258–259, 263–264
 Sunnism 55–56, 260–261, 262–263
 tax-farming 263, 321
 tax registers 320–324; interpretation 323,
 324–325, 326
 trade 13
 translations into Ottoman Turkish 428–429,
 430, 614; cookery 761; geography and
 cartography 492 n90, 492–493, 620,
 636; historiography 493–494;
 interlinear Qur'ān 428; from
 Persian 428–429, 430, 486; sciences
 635, 667
 travelogues 431, 486–487
 Tulip Period 431–432, 483, 637–638
 Turkification 176–177, 179
 warlords 273
 women: property 367; royal 356, 361,
 365, 369
 see also deportations, Ottoman; *devşirme*;
 and under Egypt; kingship; libraries;
 medicine; pharmacology; Şafavid
 empire; Syria; 'ulamā'; *waqfs*; Yemen

Index

- Ottoman Turkish language 176–177, 426, 429, 430
see also Ottoman empire (literature; translations)
- ovens 757–758
- Özbek, Khan 198 n32
- Pahang 256
- Pahlavi *see* Persian language (Middle Persian)
- painting
 biographical information on painters 728
 Chinese landscape 619, 624
 European influence 14, 724
 modern mural, to commemorate *hajj* 719–720
 portraiture 14, 622–623, 624, 738
 Šafavid patronage 423
see also figurative art; miniature painting
- Pakubuwana VI, Javanese king 197
- palaces 733–739
 ‘Abbāsīd 278, 715, 733
 decorative arts 625, 714–715, 716, 735–737
 Fāṭimid, Cairo 279
 kitchens 757
 location within cities 278, 280
 Norman, Palermo 718
 Umayyad 714–715, 716, 733; *see also* Khirbat al-Mafjar; Mshattā
 Yemeni pre-Islamic 684–685
see also Ghumdān palace *and under* Aleppo; Damascus; Istanbul; Persian art and architecture
- palatine cities 279
see also Fatehpur Sikri; Granada (Alhambra); Madīnat al-Zahrā’
- Palermo 718
- Palestine 207–208, 213, 739
- pan-Islamism 637
- Panjab *see* Punjab
- Papacy 51, 315, 482, 487
- paper and papermaking 9, 590, 677, 724
- Pappus 586
- papyri 186, 339, 578, 690
- Paracelsus 656, 657, 667
- paradise 1, 212, 686, 721
- Paris 484
- Parliament, British
 Indian Law Reports Act (1875) 181
 Mussalman Waqf Validating Act (1913) 180
- partnerships, commercial 41, 318, 336–337, 352–353
 commenda 336, 352–353
 passion plays (*ta’ziya*), Shī’ite 108
- pastoralism *see* nomads
- patience (*ṣabr*) 7
- Patna 443
- patrimonial state 235–238
 Hodgson’s models 237–238
 nomadic 265, 269
 Weberian 235
- patrimonial–bureaucratic empires 258–273
 India 268–273
 Iran 264–268, 272–273
 Ottoman 258–261, 272–273
- patronage
 by slave elites 11
 by urban leisure class 732–733
see also courts, royal and imperial; hospitals (endowments); *madrasas* (endowments); *and under individual arts and disciplines, dynasties and states and women*
- peasants
 conversion to evade taxation 186, 191
 flight 317, 329
 revolts 317; rare under Ottomans 325
- peddlers, women 363, 370
- pensions, military 275
- Perak 256, 258
- performance, public 408–409, 431
 women musicians 743–750
see also entertainments; recitation, public; theatre
- periphery, in Islamic world-view 476–477
- Persia
 agriculture 300–301
 Arabic stylists from 386
 ascetics, early Islamic 60
 astrology 456
 astronomy 589–591, 617, 625–626
 cartography 614, 617
 conversion to Islam 186, 190
 cooking 754, 761, 762
 early modern culture 11
 education 424, 500, 512, 516, 528, 577, 639
 gardens 1
 Khārijism 140
 learning 514
 legal subculture 172
 legends 6, 453
 magic-medicinal bowls 631
 mathematics 581
 metrology 349 n68
 Mithra cult 214
 Mongol period 10, 130, 249–251, 286–287, 421
 music 744, 745

Index

- nomads 273, 742
 numerical symbolism, *abjad* system 456
 philosophy 266–267
 plagues 330
 political organisation 264–268, 273
qanāts 316–317
 Saljūq period 421, 708
 sciences 504, 514, 530, 571–572, 574, 579, 589–591; *see also under* medicine
 Shī‘ism: Ismā‘īlī 124, 126, 128, 129, 130; Twelver 10, 12, 55, 58, 117, 118–122, 134, 504; Zaydī 131, 133–134
 Sufism 12, 96, 104, 119, 120
 textiles 305, 742
 transhumants 284–285
 and translation movement 535, 567–568, 570, 590
 women’s education 528
see also following four entries; individual regions and places; Ilkhānids; Šafavid empire; Sasanian empire; Qājār empire; and under festivals; India; medicine
- Persian art and architecture
 ceramics 712, 725, 730
 court culture 3–4, 685, 708, 720–721
 educational–charitable complexes 512
īwāns 699–702
 Kūfic inscriptions 710–711
 manuscripts 576, 677, 719, 721–722, 722, 726
 market buildings 282
 metalwork 731
miḥrābs 708, 712
 minarets 705, 706
 miniature painting 1–2, 15, 319–320, 721–722, 722
 palaces 273, 685, 699, 735
 Qur’āns 677
 scientific illustrations 579
see also under Šafavid empire; Sasanian empire
- Persian language
 Middle Persian (Pahlavi) 213, 414–415, 453
 translation into Arabic 215, 227, 386, 590–591
 translation of Greek astronomy into 589–590
 New Persian 389, 454
 Arabic influence 414
 Indian literary use 436, 437
 as international literary medium 421–422
- Jews write in Hebrew script 205
 Saljūq state and literary language 427
 script 414
 translations: from Arabic 414, 454, 590; from Latin, of Newton 531; into Turkish 3–4, 427, 428–429, 430, 486
 Urdu influenced by 438, 443
- Persian literature 9, 389, 414–423
adab writers discount 405
 Arabic influence 414, 416, 417
 audiences 415
 biography 459, 467–468
 ethical and religious edification 415, 416
 historiography 415, 416, 453–457; history of the viziers genre 239–240; pre-Mongol 454–455
 internationalisation 421–422
mi‘rāj literature 722–723
 prose 415–416; rhymed and rhythmic 416
 romances, popular prose 415
 Sasanian 414, 453, 590, 677
 on statecraft 239–240, 415
 Sufi works 76, 415, 420, 421
 travel narratives 415–416
 in Turkey 422, 424
 Urdu literature influenced by 440
see also under India (Persian culture)
- Persian poetry 414–415, 416–422
 Arabic influence 414
 Chishū on prosody 437
 court poetry 417–418
 didactic 416
 epigram 416, 418
 Hellenistic tropes 419
 homosexual themes 416–417, 422
 in India 436
 Khurāsānī style 416–420
mutaqārib metre 414
 mystical 416, 419
 narrative, long 416–417, 418–419
 and politics 421
 pre-Islamic Persian models 414–415
qati’ 416
 Šafavid period 422–423
 satire and invective 416
 Sufi 420, 421
 women’s 421
see also under epic poetry; *ghazal*; Indian style; *‘Irāqī* style; *mathnawī*; *qaṣīda*; romances, Persian; *rubā‘ī*
- Persian political theory
 on authority 34, 264–265
 and Greek political theory 236–237

Index

- Persian political theory (cont.)
 and imamate 230–231, 253, 255
 in India 247, 254, 268–270
 in Malaysia 254–255
 al-Manṣūr adopts 569
 medieval political ethics 248–249
 Ottomans and 258–259
 succession; conflict with Turkish tradition 312
 and translation movement 227, 535, 568
 two powers theory 225, 233–235, 236, 237,
 247, 255, 268
see also kingship (Persian conception)
- pesantren* (Indonesian schools) 518
- pharmacies, dispensing 512
- pharmacology 658, 659–660
 illustrated books on 621, 622–623
 and magic 647, 651
 Ottoman 428, 635
 translations 723
see also Dioscorides, Pedanius *and under*
 India
- Philippines, southern 257
- philology 446, 490, 649, 677
 Qur'ānic 36, 37
see also grammar, Arabic
- Philoponus, John 539, 541–542, 554
- philosopher's stone 667
- philosophy 532–563
 al-ʿĀmirī 543–544
 autobiographies of philosophers 470–471
 definitions 532
falsafa (foreign science of) 535–563
 Greek: assimilation by Islamic 540, 570–571,
 573; political theory 231–232, 246–249;
 traditionalist rejection 230; translation
 into Arabic 42–43, 215, 535–540,
 570–571; *see also* Aristotle and
 Aristotelianism; Neoplatonism; Plato
 and Platonism; Plotinus; Proclus; *and*
under Alexandria
- Ibn Rushd 555–560
- Iṣfahān school 120–121, 266–267, 562–563
- Ismāʿīlī 126, 545
 and *kalām* 126, 532–535, 552–553, 629
 and mathematics 580, 584–585, 587, 588
 medieval polymaths and 410–411
 moral, of *adab* 503
 and music 746–747
 and optics 584
 practical 231–232, 266–267
 and rational scepticism 42–43
 and religion 540, 541, 556, 559, 561–563, 565;
see also under Sufism; theology
- Suhrawardī 560–561
 tenth-century rise 544–545
 terminology 9, 538, 550–551
 translations *see under* Greek *above*
see also logic; metaphysics; natural
 philosophy; *and under* al-Andalus;
 Baghdad; al-Fārābī; al-Ghazālī; Ibn
 Sīnā; al-Kindī; Sufism
- phlogiston theory 654
- phonetics 649
- phrase-books 432
- phylacteries 651
- physicians *see* medicine
- physics 501, 601, 645
- physiology 658
- Picatrix* (*Ghāyat al-ḥakīm*) 649
- pickles 760–761
- Piero della Francesca 1
- piety
 personal 373–374, 513
 popular 57, 642–643, 644–645
- pigs 293, 761
- pilgrimages 484
 commemoration of completion 617, 720
see also *hajj*; *ziyārāt*; *and under* cartography;
 Shīʿism
- pillars of Islam 144–145, 498
see also alms-tax; fasting; *hajj*; prayer;
shahāda
- pious foundations *see* endowments; pious
- Pires, Tomé 197
- Pīrī Reʿīs 488–489, 493, 618–619
- plague 300, 308, 329–331, 346, 359
- plantation-type production 304
- Plato and Platonism
 commentaries on *Republic* 538–539, 558
 and education 524
 Galen's adoption of ideas from 658
 influence 6, 542–543, 544, 546, 560–561
 translations and summaries 536, 538
- Plotinus 536–538, 541, 553, 560, 648–649
- poetry *see* Azerbaijan (*Azerī* poetry); Arabic
 poetry; Persian poetry; *and under*
 Sufism; Turkish literature; Urdu
 literature
- Poitiers, battle of 309
- political theory and organisation 225–273
 early Islamic 225–232
 Greek 231–232, 236–237
ḥadīth on 246–248
 historical bureaucratic empires 272
 Ibn Khaldūn's theory 238–239
 on imamate and *sharīʿa* 241–245

Index

- military-patronage state 245–254
and opposition movements 228–229
and religion 23, 29, 54–56
siyāsa(t) 235
sultanate and patrimonial monarchies 233–240
two-powers theory 225, 233–235, 236, 237, 247, 255, 268
see also imamate; kingship; mirrors for princes; patrimonial state; patrimonial–bureaucratic empires; Persian political theory; royalism, Islamic; shepherd and flock image; *and under individual states and cartography*; Neoplatonism; Qur’ān; Shī’ism
- poll-tax (*jizya*) 29–30, 203, 321
polygamy 362–363
polymathy, medieval 410–411
polytheism 26, 214, 684, 686
popular culture
 literature 7, 402, 415, 679, 680; *see also* preachers, popular; storytelling
 see also under education; entertainments; religion
- population figures 300, 306–308, 321–322
 Christians as proportion 208
 see also under Baghdad; Egypt
- pork 761
Porphyry 536, 539, 546, 549
portolan charts 488, 617, 618–619
portraiture 14, 622–623, 624, 738
Portugal 256, 634–636
postal services 478, 623
pottery *see* ceramics
- prayer, Islamic ritual 24–25, 44–45
 African rulers value protection 193
 call to 24–25, 704
 congregational 24, 32, 44–45, 359, 686; in garrison towns 148; leaders 34, 161, 265; sermon *see* *khutba*
 curative powers 660–661
 direction *see* *qibla*
 establishment 24–25, 29, 32
 fiqh books on 144
 ḥadīths on superiority of learning over 497–498
 obligatory nature 29, 146, 686
 shahāda as part of 41
 times 24, 565, 594–595
 preachers, popular 58, 97–98, 500, 525–526, 680
 pregnancy, medical work on 665–666
 pre-Islamic period *see* Late Antiquity *and under* Arabs and Arabia
- printing 432–433, 493
- prisoners of war 11, 186, 191, 227, 327
 see also captivity narratives
- privacy 274
 private/public distinction 144
- Proclus 536, 539, 541, 543
propaganda 390–391, 570
properties, occult specific (*khawāṣṣ*) 649, 651, 658–659
- property
 law in India under British 182
 qāḍīs and cases involving 160, 161
 surplus of 153 n15
 women’s 362, 364, 366–370
- prophets and prophecy 21–22, 71, 125
 see also under kingship; magic; Muḥammad, the Prophet
- prophylaxis *see* magic (prophylactic)
- prose, rhymed and rhythmic
 Arabic 396, 449, 680
 Persian 416, 455
- prosody 437, 649
 see also metres; prose, rhymed and rhythmic
- prostitution 371, 377
- proverbs, vernacular 400, 432
- psychology, philosophical 542–543, 551–552, 661
- Ptolemy (Claudius Ptolemaeus) 596–599
 cartography 478, 619
 geographers in tradition of 477–484
 Optics 584
 planetary theory 591, 596–599; critiques 599, 600, 601, 603–606, 609–610
 Pseudo-Ptolemaic *Kitāb al-thamara* 650
 translations of *Almagest* 539, 579
 zījes using Ptolemaic parameters 591, 597
- pulpits *see* *minbars*
- pulses 292, 757, 760
- punishments
 for adultery 37, 377
 capital, for apostasy 188, 204–205
 corporal, in schools 521–522, 524
 divergence of Qur’ān and *ḥadīth* on 37
 divine 146
 for magicians 647
 siyāsa(t) 235
 ‘Umar’s regulation on 149
- Punjab 99, 195
 language 439
 West 194, 195
- purification, ritual 24, 144
- Pythagoreanism 6, 648–649, 746
 see also Neopythagoreanism
- pyxides, Andalusian ivory 719, 736

Index

- Qāḍī Aḥmad 728
 al-Qāḍī al-Fāḍil 206, 449
 al-Qāḍī ‘Iyāḍ 469
 al-Qādir, ‘Abbāsīd caliph 34, 51, 241
 Qādirīyya 85, 91, 92–93, 520, 568
 in India 99, 100, 101, 102
 qāḍīs 158–161, 168–171
 caliphal appointment 32, 34, 229
 civic leadership 167
 complaints against 162
 and conversions to Islam 161, 195
 flexibility and discretion 168–169
 functions 56, 155, 161; administration 56, 155;
 arbitration 149, 161
 fuqahā’ as 154
 ḥadīth transmitted by 152
 in immediate post-conquest period 149–150
 in India 161, 179, 195
 Ottoman state employees 56
 records, *ḍiwāns* 160–161
 and religious narratives 150
 staff 158–160, 161, 169, 170
 al-Qā’im, ‘Abbāsīd caliph 241
 qā’im 115, 228, 232
 see also Mahdism and the mahdī
 Qā’im Chāndpūrī 434–435
 Qājār empire 14–16, 174, 633, 639, 735
 political organisation 268, 273
 religion 104, 122
 Qalandar Bakhsh Jur’at 443
 Qalandariyya 95–96
 Qalāwūn, Mamlūk sultan 137–138, 451
 al-Qalyūbī 402
 qanāts 294, 316–317
 Qānṣawh al-Ghawrī, Mamlūk sultan 3–4
 Qara Mustafa Paşa 633
 Qarabāgh steppes 285
 Qarābāsh Walī, ‘Alī, and Qarābāshīyya 94
 Qarakhānids 237, 250, 622
 language and literature 425, 426
 Qaraman (Turkish-speaking Greek orthodox)
 432
 Qarāmiṭa 123–124, 125, 128
 state, Baḥrayn 117, 124, 128
 Qaraqūsh (eunuch) 345
 qariya (agricultural undertaking) 290–291, 302–303
 Qaryat al-Faw 684
 Qashqā’i tribal confederation 742
 Qasī, Banū 186
 qaṣīda (verse form) 3, 4, 387, 396
 in Persian 416, 417–418, 420–421
 in Turkish 430, 431
 Qāsim Hindūshāh 666
 Qāsīm-Shāhī branch of Nizārīyya 130, 131
 Qāsīmīyya 134, 135, 136
 Qasr Ibrīm documents 339, 340, 343, 348 n63
 qāṣṣ *see* storytelling
 qatī’ (verse form) 416, 418
 Qaṭrān-i Tabrīzī 419–420
 Qavvām al-Dīn Shīrāzī 627–628
 Qaygusuz Abdāl 428
 qayna (pl. *qiyān*, women musicians and
 poetesses) 391–394
 Qayrawān 206–207, 213, 218, 303, 311, 696
 foundation 228, 276
 Great Mosque 696–698, 708; minaret 696,
 697, 698, 705
 Qayserī 98
 Qāzān khanate: 250, 429
 al-Qazwīnī, Zakarīyā’ ibn Muḥammad 490,
 576–632, 577, 616, 622
 qibla 25, 687
 determination and mapping 565, 593–594,
 613 n147, 616–617, 623, 625
 al-Qifṭī 398–399
 Qinalizāda, ‘Alī Çelebī 249, 263
 Qipchak Turkic language 426, 427, 429
 qirāt (money of account) 347–348, 351–352
 Qirshehir 98
 qit’a (Urdu poetic form) 441
 qiyān (women musicians and poetesses) 391–394
 qiyās (‘analogy’) 39, 157, 158
 Qizilbāsh 98, 99, 119, 120, 261, 262
 under Ṣafavid rule 266, 289
 quadrant, mural 598
 qualities, four 656
 qudamā’ (pre-Islamic poets) 386–387
 Qudāma ibn Ja’far 479
 queen mother, Ottoman *see wālide sultān*
 queens, reigning 258, 360
 question and answer genre 575
 quietism, political 32
 Quḷī, Sultan, of Golconda 122
 Qumm 120
 Qummī, Mīrzā Abū al-Qāsim 268
 Shī’ite school of 116, 117
 Qur’ān
 adab founded on 504
 ahl al-dhimma not to be taught 203
 allegorical interpretation (*ta’wīl*) 126, 138
 on angels 643
 and Arabic language 386–387, 502, 668–669,
 671, 672; linguistic scholarship 36, 37, 502
 and arts 685, 686, 690, 716; figurative 2, 686;
 inscriptions 694
 and Bible 21, 22

Index

- boxes for 716
and Christianity 22, 26–27, 46, 201–202, 209–210
createdness 34, 42, 43, 534; rejected 534;
see also *miḥna*
demons in 643
in education 148, 203, 506, 517, 521,
527, 671
eloquence 502
Ḥanbalī school and 8, 39, 534
on idol worship 686
on immanence of God 62
in India 195, 196
on inheritance 150, 578
and Judaism 22, 25–26, 201–202, 209–210
legal authority 37, 38, 39, 149, 150, 151, 155
literal acceptance 43
and magic 641–642, 643–645; verses used in
644–645, 647, 648, 660–661
on *Majūs* 202
manuscripts 711–712, 719, 726, 728; *giriḥ*
designs 713, 716; Küfīc 710; Mamlūk 712,
713, 719
and medicine 660, 666; healing powers of
verses 645, 647, 660–661
memorisation 506, 671–672
monotheism 26, 41
Mu'awwidhatān ('The Two Seekers of
Refuge') 644–645, 647
and music 744
Muslim identity displayed in 24
and natural world 209–212, 220
orality of text and transmission 506,
670–674, 676, 680
origin 21, 209–210
on paradise 212, 686
poetic language 386–387
and politics and statecraft 211, 225, 233–234,
246–248
on prayer 24
Prophet as model to emulate 152
public recitation 670–671, 673–674, 680
readers (*qurrā'*) 228
study of 36–37; see also Qur'ānic exegesis
and succession to Prophet 107, 225
Sufi meditation on 62
and *sunna* 8, 37
transcendent terminology 22
transcription 672–673; and arts 685, 690,
692–693; and crystallisation of classical
Arabic 671, 672; Egyptian edition
(1924) 674; scripts 677, 690, 711–712;
'Uthmān's 32, 36, 672–673, 674, 690;
vocalisation 673, 711–712
translations: Turkish interlinear 428;
Urdu 441
'Umar ibn al-Khaṭṭāb and 149, 150, 672
unifying role in Islamic culture 530
universalism 30
women's reading of 371–372, 527
REFERENCES: (1) 647; (1:2) 22; (1:4) 22;
(2:62) 26; (2:87) 643; (2:102) 641 n10,
643 n17; (2:115) 62; (2:118) 264;
(2:125) 27; (2:127) 27; (2:136) 25–26;
(2:143) 19; (2:144) 593; (2:173) 247; (2:185)
25; (2:186) 62; (2:187) 25; (2:225) 22;
(2:233) 666; (2:253) 643; (2:256) 200;
(3:26) 233–234, 240, 257; (3:43) 686; (3:67)
27; (4:103) 24; (4:171) 26; (5:3) 751–752;
(5:44) 25; (5:46) 25; (5:54) 63; (5:69) 26;
(5:70) 26; (5:73) 41; (5:82) 26–27; (5:110)
641 n10; (5:116) 21; (6:7) 641 n10; (6:32)
46; (6:73) 22; (7:54) 43; (7:116) 641 n10,
643 n16; (7:172) 63; (9:11) 27; (9:33)
688–690; (10:2) 643; (10:62) 65; (10:76) 641
641 n10, 643; (10:77) 641 n10; (10:81) 641
n10, 643 n16; (11:7) 641 n10; (12:2) 671;
(15:16–18) 643 n20; (15:29) 643; (16:66)
753; (16:102) 643; (17:1) 692; (18:65) 65;
(18:31) 686; (20:5) 43; (20:57) 641 n10;
(20:58) 641 n10; (20:63) 641 n10;
(20:66) 641 n10, 643 n16; (20:69) 643 n16;
(20:71) 641 n10; (20:73) 641 n10;
(20:113) 671; (21:3) 641 n10, 643; (21:5)
644 n21; (21:81–3) 643 n18; (22:18) 211;
(22:23) 686; (24:35) 22, 77; (26:35) 641
n10; (26:49) 641 n10; (26:193) 643;
(27:13) 641 n10; (27:15–17) 643 n18;
(28:36) 641 n10; (28:48) 641 n10; (33:40)
28; (34:12–15) 643 n18, 686; (34:43) 641
n10; (36:69) 644 n21; (37:6–10) 643 n20;
(37:15) 641 n10; (37:36) 644 n21; (38:25)
264; (38:34–40) 643 n18; (42:25) 22;
(43:30) 641 n10; (43:70–3) 686; (44:14) 644;
644; (46:7) 641 n10; (46:15) 666; (47:15)
753; (50:16) 62; (51:1–4) 210; (52:15) 641
n10; (52:29) 643–644; (52:30) 644 n21;
(54:2) 641 n10; (57:27) 46; (61:6) 26, 641
n10; (67:5) 643 n20; (69:41) 644 n21;
(69:42) 643–644; (72:8–9) 643 n20;
(74:24) 641 n10; (76:15–22) 686; (81:1–14)
211; (82:1–5) 22; (88:10–16) 686; (90:14)
751–752; (92:13) 22; (93:11)
470; (96) 21, 670; (97:4) 643;
(108:2) 24; (112) 688–690; (113)
644–645, 647; (113:1) 214; (113:4) 214;
(114) 644–645, 647

Index

- Qurʾān schools 517, 521–522
 Qurʾānic exegesis (*tafsīr*)
 Arabic 33, 36–37, 152, 500, 676, 677
 Turkic 424
 Urdu 441
 Quraysh
 caliphs from 30, 31, 32, 35, 107
 claim to leadership 28, 29, 31,
 32, 35
 Companions from 28
 conversion to Islam 27–28
 and Kaʿba 22, 684
 Muḥammad’s enmity with 22–23, 26
qurrāʾ (Qurʾān readers) 228
 al-Qurṭubī, Maslama ibn Qāsim 629,
 649, 653
 Quṣayr ‘Amra 733
 Quseir documents 339, 343–344,
 348, 349
 al-Qushāshī, Aḥmad 518
 al-Qushayrī, ‘Abd al-Karīm 76
 al-Qūshjī, ‘Alā’ al-Dīn 601, 611
quṣṣāṣ *see* storytelling
 Quṣṭā ibn Lūqā 539, 581, 586
 Quṭb al-Dīn Ayybak 705
 Quṭb al-Dīn al-Shīrāzī *see* *under* al-Shīrāzī
 Quṭb-Shāhī dynasty of Golconda 122
 Qutlumush 288

 Rabāṭ 282
 rabbit 759
 al-Rabīʿ ibn Yūnus 278
 Rābīʿa al-ʿAdawiyya 45–46, 65
 Rābīʿa Quzdārī 421
 al-Rāḍī, ‘Abbāsīd caliph 401
 al-Raḍī, Sharīf 117
raḥal (aristocratic estate) 290, 302
 Raḥmāniyya 91
raʿa (return from dead or from occultation)
 110
 Rājā Rām 437
 Ramaḍān 25, 38, 161
 Ramla 309
 Rampur 443
 Rangīn, Saʿādat Yār Khān 443
 al-Ranīrī, Nūr al-Dīn 103
 Raqqa 715
 Rashīd al-Dawla 576
 Rashīd al-Dīn ibn al-Manṣūr 621
 Rashīd al-Dīn Sinān 130
 Rashīd al-Dīn Ṭabīb 317, 491–492
 writings 287, 415, 455, 491–492, 721
 Rashīdiyya–Šālihiyya 92

 Rāshīdūn caliphs 106–107, 226, 275
 Shīʿite attitudes to 110, 111, 132, 135, 136
 see also *individual names*
 al-Rassī, al-Qāsim ibn Ibrāhīm 133, 135
 Rasūlid dynasty of Yemen 300
 rational sciences (*ʿulūm ʿaqliyya*) 499–500,
 501–502, 530–531
 education in 514; Ottoman 515, 523; Mughal
 515–516; self-teaching 510
 and traditional sciences 503–504
 see also logic; mathematics; medicine;
 metaphysics; physics; sciences
 rationality *see* reasoning
 Ratu Sinuhun, Sumatran queen 258
 Rāvandī 454
rawḍiyyāt (poetic genre) 1
rawks (cadastral surveys) 345, 346, 347
raʿy (‘considered opinion’) 39, 151, 153–154, 155,
 156–158
 Rayy 218, 574, 716
 al-Rāzī, Abū Bakr 470, 544, 663
 see also *under* alchemy; medicine
 Rāzī, Amīn Aḥmad 490
 al-Rāzī, Fakhr al-Dīn *see* Fakhr al-Dīn
 al-Rāzī
razm (poetry depicting warfare) 440
 reading
 aloud 678–679
 for relaxation 412
 see also literacy
 reasoning 42–43, 236, 395, 403, 565
 and occult sciences 645, 646, 650
 see also *ijtihād*; Muʿtazila; *qiyās*; *raʿy*; and
 under Shīʿism
 recitation, public
 poetry 669
 popular literature 679, 680
 see also *under* *ḥadīth*; Qurʾān
 records, official 160–161, 181, 445
 see also *diwāns*; registers; government
 Red Sea 13, 318, 352, 635–636
 reed mats 739
 reforms, modern 13–14, 633–639
 see also *under* education; Ottoman empire;
 Sufism
 regencies 253, 360–361
 registers, government 445
 Ottoman tax 320–325, 326
 Rēkhṭa (Urdu) language 434, 436, 438
rēkhṭī (poetic genre) 436, 443
 religion
 Arabian pre-Islamic 20–21
 and mathematics 565, 580, 588

Index

- medical rivalries expressed as differences of
 573
 and political authority 23, 29, 54–56
 popular 38, 57, 119, 642–643, 644–645;
 see also preachers, popular
 and sciences 572–573, 595
see also Christians and Christianity; idols;
 Islam; Jews and Judaism; monotheism;
 polytheism; women (religious
 participation); *and under* agriculture;
 philosophy; Turks
 relishes, pickled 761
 rentier class 295
 Rezā ‘Abbāsī, illustration in style of 576
 Ribāṭ al-Shākīr 374
ribāṭs (Sufi lodges) 53, 90, 373–374
 rice 216, 292, 293–294, 305, 760, 762
 Gayo Lord of the Fields ritual 219–220
 al-Riḍā, Imām; shrine at Mashhad 114, 120,
 720
al-riḍā (‘the agreed upon’) 111–112, 228, 229
riḍā, wars of 28–29
 Rifā‘iyya 85
riḥla (literary genre) 5, 412, 485
risāla (epistle) genre 384–385, 396
 ritual/legal (‘*ibādāt*/*mu‘āmalāt*) distinction
 144–145
 river basins 291, 358
 rock crystal carving 736–737, 737
 rock reliefs, Sasanian 685
 Roger II, king of Sicily 478, 625 n202, 625, 718
 Roman empire 213
 romances, Persian
 popular prose 415
 verse 416, 419, 420–421, 422
 Romania 313–314
 Romanos Diogenes, Roman emperor 313
 Rome; Hārūn ibn Yaḥyā’s description 487
 Rosenthal, Franz 497
 routes, major trunk 478
 royalism, Islamic 245–254, 255, 257–259
rubā‘ī (pl. *rubā‘iyāt*, poetic form) 416, 418,
 426, 441
 Rūdakī 415, 417, 418
 Rukn al-Dīn Abū al-Faṭḥ 100
 rulers 225–273
 Turkish image of sacred tree growing from
 body 218
 see also caliphate; imamate; kingship;
 leadership; sultanate; women (royal)
 Rūm, Saljūq sultanate of 313–314, 427
 Rūmī, Mawlānā Jalāl al-Dīn
 poetry 422, 427
 residence in Konya 314, 427, 467–468
 Sufism 57, 79–80, 420
 rural life *see* agriculture; countryside
 Russia 11, 174, 187, 317, 483
 see also Volga region
 Rustam ‘Alī Bijnorī 441
 Rustamid state 140
 Rūyān 134
 Rūzbihān al-Baqlī 72
 Sa‘adya Gaon 206
 al-Šābi‘ family 395–396, 447, 566, 573, 574
 see also Thābit ibn Qurra
sabk-i hindī (‘Indian style’) 440
 Sabzawārī, Mullā Muḥammad Bāqir 267
 Sa‘d al-Dīn Muḥammad al-Kāshghārī 80
 Ša‘da, Yemen 134–135
 Sa‘dī Shīrāzī, Shaykh Muṣliḥ al-Dīn 248, 415,
 416, 421–422, 499
 Sa‘did dynasty of Morocco 90
 Šadr al-Dīn Muḥammad Shīrāzī *see*
 Mullā Šadrā
 Šadr al-Dīn al-Qunawī 81
 Šadr al-Dīn al-Sharī‘a 606, 612
 Šadr al-Dīn al-Shīrāzī *see* Mullā Šadrā
 al-Šafādī 377–378, 460–461, 462
 al-Šafāqūsī, ‘Alī al-Sharafī 617 n167
 Šafavid empire
 army 266, 289
 arts 14, 423, 625–626, 722–723
 cartography 617
 centralisation 266
 Christianity 626
 claim to ‘Alid descent 120, 262
 cooking 761, 762
 craft guilds and workshops 728
 demise 58
 education 500, 516, 528, 577
 hierocracy 265–268
 historiography 416, 456
 and India 122
 kingship 264–265, 266–268
 law and juristic theory 260–263, 267, 268
 magic 630
 and Mahdism 120, 264
 mi‘rāj literature 722–723
 nomadic population 273
 and Ottoman empire 260–263, 289
 palaces 735
 poetry 422–423
 political organisation 264–268, 272–273
 Qizilbāsh supporters 266, 289
 revolution establishing 260–263

Index

- Šafavid empire (cont.)
 scholarly culture; vitality 120–121, 634
 sciences 574–575, 577; astronomy 617, 625–626
 Shī'ism 10, 12, 55, 58, 119–122, 134
 slaves 11, 273, 523
 Sufism 55, 119–120, 260–261, 264, 266
 talismanic shirts 633
 and Thailand 481, 482
 urban planning 281
 waqfs 267
 women's education 528
 Šafawiyya (Sufi order) 55, 119–120, 260–261, 266
 safe-conduct 475
 Šaffārids 417
 saffron 303
 Šafi I, Shāh 266
 Šafi al-Dīn, Shaykh 119
 Šafi al-Dīn al-Urmawī 748, 749–750
 Sahara 283–284, 528
 Sufism 91, 92–93, 517
 Sahl al-Tustarī, Abū Muḥammad ibn 'Abd Allāh 72
 Šā'ib 423
 Sa'īd ibn Aḥmad, sultan of Oman 141
 Šā'īd ibn Makhlad 397
 Šā'īd al-Andalusī 601
 St Gotthard, battle of 482
 saints, Sufi 86–90
 pious visits and pilgrimages to tombs 57, 88–89, 90, 92, 218, 720
 women 373, 374
saj' 410
 see also prose, rhymed and rhythmic
 al-Sakhāwī, Shams al-Dīn 508, 528, 575
 sal ammoniac 654–655
 Šalāḥ al-Dīn al-Ayyūbī (Saladin) 7, 54, 280, 345, 391, 631
 Cairo citadel built by
 coinage 343–344
 conquests 137, 560
 Egypt 10, 232
 historiography and biographies 448–449, 469, 471
 Maimonides as physician to
 50, 207
 and Suhrawardī 560
 Salakta 698
 Salamiyya, Ismā'īlī *da'wa* in 123, 124
salāt see prayer
 al-Šālīḥ Ayyūb 360
 al-Šālīḥī al-Khwārizmī al-Kaṭī 653
 Salīm Chishtī, tomb of 281, 716
 Sālimiyya 75
 Saljūqs 48, 313–314
 armies 283, 284, 314
 arts 314, 621 n182, 625–626, 708
 Byzantine wars 48, 299, 313, 314
 cities 280, 314
 historiography 453–455
 imamate 245
 iqṭā' system 301
 languages, state and literary 427
 literature 421, 427
 mirrors for princes 454
 overthrow 237, 313, 314
 patrimonialism 237, 288
 religious culture 313, 314; and Sunnī restoration 117, 237, 246
 sultanate of Rūm 313–314, 427
 Salmān, Mas'ūd Sa'd 435, 437
 Salmān al-Fārisī 138
 Salonika 310, 322
 salons *see majālis*
 salt 752
samā' (Sufi ritual) 83–84
Samak-i 'ayyār 415
 Sāmānids 133, 235–236, 312, 573–574, 712
 historiography 453
 literature 414, 416, 418
 politics and statecraft 233, 235–236
 Samarqand
 architecture 280, 627; Bībī Khānum mosque 700; Registan 281, 512
 ceramics 678
 law 250
 learning 424, 504, 508, 512, 514, 515
 literary culture 416, 427, 515
 music 750
 papermaking 724
 sciences 504, 514; astronomy 4, 627; mathematics 4, 512, 627
 scripts 429, 678
 Sufism 12
 Sāmarrā' 114, 278–279
 minarets 697–698, 705
 ornament 715
 palaces 278, 733
 Qubbat al-Sulaybiyya 720
 al-Samaw'al ibn Yahyā al-Maghribī 185, 378, 468–469, 581, 588–589
 Šan'ā' 136, 694
 Sanā'ī 418, 419, 420
 Sangbast; Ghaznavid mausoleum 720
 Sanḥāja nomads 282, 289

Index

- Sanjar, Saljūq sultan 246, 284, 313, 720
 Sanjar al-Shujā'ī 357
 Sanskrit language
 loan words in Urdu 438
 poetics 437, 440, 441
 translations into Arabic 215, 480, 569–570, 590–591, 600
 Sanūsīyya 92
 Şaqāliba 310
 sāqīya (water-lifting device) 294
 Saragossa 309
 Saraiki language 439
 Sarī al-Saqaṭī, Abū al-Ḥasan 68
 al-Sarrāj, Abū Muḥammad Ja'far ibn Aḥmad 393, 396, 408–411
 al-Sarrāj, Abū Naṣr 74–75
 Sasanian empire
 Alexander's destruction 567, 568
 art and architecture 685, 717–718; and Dome of the Rock 692, 693
 Būyids and culture 574
 cities under Muslim rule 277
 coinage; early Islamic imitations 688, 689
 literary culture 414, 453, 590, 677
 medicine 662
 palace at Ctesiphon 699
 society; men of the sword, pen, and affairs 249
 translation 567
 Satan (Iblīs) 643
 satire
 Arabic poetic (*hiḡā'*) 7, 357, 376, 387
 Cairene streetplayers' 499
 Persian poetic 416
 Urdu poetic 435–436, 441
 Sato, T. 346
 Satpanth ('true path') Ismā'īliyya 131
 Sawdā, Mirzā Muḥammad Rafī' 440, 442
 Sayf ibn 'Umar 445
 Sayf al-Dawla, ruler of Aleppo 137, 387
 sāz (musical instrument) 428
 scales, weighing- 349
 scholarship
 authority to transmit 460, 462, 487, 494;
 see also ijāza
 autobiographies 470
 debates 154–155, 582, 583; *see also ḡalqas*
 fields of knowledge 499–505
 international nature of Islamic 4–5, 517, 518, 530
 mobility and travel 5, 320, 507–508, 518, 530;
 to collect *ijāzas* 5, 36, 507, 676; fleeing
 Mongols 10
 networks 365, 460, 508, 517, 518, 530
 non-Arab scholars of Arabic literature 37
 patronage and funding 10, 510, 511, 513, 514
 prestige 497–498, 499, 513
 women 372–373, 527, 528–529
 see also individual disciplines; education; genealogy (figurative and intellectual); ḡalqas; oral culture; 'ulamā'; writing; and material on learning and scholarship under individual regions and states and consensus; conversion to Islam
 sciences 4, 8–9, 564–639
 and arts 575–577, 620–629, 635, 721
 Chinese influence 571–572, 579, 622, 654; and illustration 576, 622
 European 4, 16, 492
 Greek 42–43, 213, 215, 230, 501, 565, 570, 621, 723
 'Islamic' or 'Arabic' appellation 589
 literary genres 575
 majālis, salons 575
 manuscripts 576, 577–578; illustrated 575–578, 613, 615, 620–625, 626–627, 723
 mythical origins in prophet Enoch 463–464
 native knowledge 571–572
 patronage 572–578
 polymathy, medieval 410–411
 post-medieval period 633–639
 and reform 633–639
 terminology developed 538
 translation movement and 215, 501, 565–572, 621, 723
 see also instruments, scientific; rational sciences; traditional sciences; individual branches of science, and under individual states and regions and agriculture; education; religion; Shi'ism
 scribes
 qāḡīs' 158, 160, 161, 170
 see also kuttāb
 scripts 710–714
 Arabic 424, 670, 673, 690, 693, 710–714; in combination 711–712; cursive 677, 690, 711–712, 714; Ḥijāzī 690; Kūfīc 692, 710–711, 711, 712; proportional systems 711; for Qur'ān 677, 690, 711–712; vocalisation 670, 673, 677, 710, 711–712
 Armenian 432
 Brahmin 424
 Greek 432
 Hebrew 205, 206

Index

- scripts (cont.)
 Manichaean 424
 Nabataean 669–670
 Persian 414
 Syriac 669
 Turkic 424, 425, 432; Uighur 424, 425, 429
 see also calligraphy; inscriptions
 sculpture 684
 Sebükteġin 236, 312
Secreta secretorum (*Sirr al-asrār*) 6, 649–650
 secretaries *see* *kuttāb*
 security, state provision of 290, 295, 296,
 326–327
 sedentarisation *see under* nomads
sefāretnāme (embassy memoirs) 432, 483
 Seleucid empire 579
 self-sufficiency 13, 16
 Selīm I the Grim, Ottoman sultan 11, 259, 260,
 262, 315, 319
 Selīm II, Ottoman sultan 93, 633
 Semeonis, Simon 204
 Senegambia 516
 Senior Zadiith filius Hamuel (Ibn Umayl)
 652, 653
 Serçe Limani shipwreck 353–354
 sermons 359, 530
 academic, *waʿz* 503
 literary 403–404
 see also *khuṭba*; preachers, popular
 settlement and settled populations 290
 see also under nomads
 settlement, amicable (*ṣulḥ*) 168
 Seville 358, 371, 394
 sexuality 374–379
 apocalyptic works on 359, 379
 Christians and 374, 377
 erotic literature 375–376, 378
 laws on 375, 376
 Muḥammad and 374–375
 mystical interpretation 373
 relations with slaves 356, 365–366, 376;
 see also prostitution
 social anxiety and control 358–359, 372, 375,
 376, 379
 see also contraception; homosexuality;
 prostitution; *and under* women
 Seyfī Çelebi 492
seyhülislam, Ottoman 56
 Sezāʿi, Hasan, and al-Sezāʿiyya 93
 Shaʿbān Walī al-Qastamūni and
 Shaʿbāniyya 94
 Shabbetai Sevi 200
 al-Shābushṭī 393, 396, 397
 Shādhiliyya 85–86, 90–91
 shadow theatre 10, 431
shafāʿa (intercession) 57
 Shāfiʿ al-Miṣrī 451
 al-Shāfiʿī, Muḥammad ibn Idrīs 38–39, 157, 158,
 164, 469, 475
 mausoleum in Cairo 720
 personal school 164, 165
 Shāfiʿī school of law 38–39, 52, 165, 231,
 257, 406
 and marital matters 363, 366
 political theory 241
 Shāfiʿī–Ashʿarī party of Khurāsān 73
 Shafiq Awrangābādī, Lachhmī Narāʿin 440
 Shāh, title of 254, 264
 Shāh ʿAbd Allāh 100
 Shāh ʿĀlam II, Mughal emperor 437
 Shāh Ḥātim 435, 436, 443
 Shāh Naṣīr 443
 Shāh Qumays Gīlānī 100
 Shāh Rukh Mirzā ibn Tīmūr Lang 4–5, 250, 481,
 504, 624
 Shāh Walī Allāh of Delhi 14, 59, 101,
 102, 516
shahāda 41–42, 144 n5
shāhanshāh, title of 233, 270
 Shahīd 418
 Shāhjahān I, Mughal emperor 269, 270,
 272, 721
Shāhnāma 3–4
 Shajar al-Durr, Egyptian queen 360
shajara (Sufi spiritual lineage) 519
 shamanism 12, 92, 218
 Shams al-Dawla Abū Ṭāhir, ruler of
 Hamadhān 663
 Shams al-Dīn Aḥmad Sīvāsī 93
 Shams al-Dīn al-Āmulī 575, 576–632
 Shams al-Dīn al-Dunaysirī 575
 Shams al-Dīn Meḥmed Beg of Karaman 427
 Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad, Imām 130
 Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad ibn Abī Ṭālib
 615–616
 Shams al-Dīn al-Samatrāʿī 103
 Shams Umm al-Fuqarāʾ 373
 Shams-i Ṭabrīz 79–80
 Shamsiyya 93
 Shaqīq al-Balkhī 65–67
 Sharaf al-Dīn Yaḥyā Manērī 100, 102
 al-Shaʿrānī, ʿAbd al-Wahhāb 471, 677
 sharecropping 290–291, 294
sharʿa *see* law and jurisprudence
sharʿa courts 168–171
 see also *qāḍīs*

Index

- Sharīf al-Raḍī 117
 Shaṭṭ al-‘Arab 298
 Shaṭṭāriyya 99, 100–101, 102, 103
 al-Shawkānī 89
 Shaybānī 164, 172, 173
 Shaykh al-Ṭā’ifa (Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan al-Ṭūsī) 117, 245
shaykhs, Sufi 54, 58
 relations with followers 84, 86, 519–520
 shaykh al-shuyūkh, Egyptian 55
 sheep 283–284, 759, 760
 shepherd and flock, political image of 231, 248
 Shēr Muḥammad Khān Īmān 442
 Sher Shāh Sūr 271
 Shibānī Khān Muḥammad 261
 al-Shibli 71, 72
 Shifā’ī 667
 shifting cultivation 294
 Shihāb al-Dīn al-Ḥijāzī 375
 Shihābid dynasty 128
 Shī’ism
 and ‘Abbāsids 110, 111–112, 114, 570
 apocalyptic literature 655
 armed revolt 62
 Baghdad school 116–117, 121, 122, 135, 533
 divisions 106
 drama 108
 esoteric texts 8
 extent 3
 extreme 98, 99
 ghulāt thinkers 98, 109, 110, 112–113, 127, 136–137
 historiography 445, 454
 Ithnā ‘Asharī *see* Twelvers
 and kingship 264, 265
 Kūfa as centre 109, 111, 114
 and magic-medicinal bowls 631
 martyrdom 108
 al-Mukhtār ‘s movement 108–109
 origins and early history 106–113
 passion motive 108
 pilgrimages 114, 617, 720
 political theory 241–243, 248, 249–250
 popular religion 119
 Prophet’s family as entitled to leadership 106, 107
 and reasoning 8, 116–117, 118, 121–122, 132, 134
 rise 31
 and sciences 504, 573
 Sevener *see* Ismā’īliyya
 as *shī’at ‘Alī* 107–108
 tenets 8, 31
 theology 8, 112, 126, 545
 traditionism 8, 113, 116, 117, 121–122
 see also occultation of imams; *individual movements*, especially Imāmiyya; Ismā’īliyya; Kaysāniyya; Nuṣayriyya; Twelvers; Zaydiyya; *and under individual states and regions and alchemy*; ‘Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib; ‘Alids; biography; Būyids; caliphate; eschatology; *ḥadīth*; imamate; law and jurisprudence; *majlis*; *mawālī*; Mu’tazila; Qumm; Sufism; Sunnism; *taqīyya*; traditionists
 Shinqīṭ of Mauritania 517
 ship of state image 258
 shipping 318
 shipwrecks 353–354
 see also navigation
 Shīrāz 276, 277, 514, 574, 678
 al-Shīrāzī, Quṭb al-Dīn 562, 606, 607–608, 611, 612, 613
 Ṣafavid illustrated manuscript 576, 622
 al-Shīrāzī al-Wā’iz, Abū ‘Abd Allāh 680
 al-Shīrbīnī 412
 shirts, magic 630, 633
 shoes 356
 shrines, local 57
 see also ziyārāt
 Shryock, Andrew 472–473
 Shujā‘, Sha‘bānī *shaykh* 94
 Shujā‘ ibn Man‘a (craftsman) 732
 Shumayn, ‘Alī ibn al-Ḥasan ibn ‘Antar, of Ḥilla 399
shūrā (‘consultation’, in choice of caliph) 31
 Shurāt (sing. Shārī, name for Khārijites) 139
shu‘ūbiyya (ethic particularism) 386, 389–390, 573
 Sials of Punjab 195
 Sicily 299, 318, 559, 677
 Norman kingdom 49, 478
 siege warfare 279–280
ṣifāt (attributes of God) 42, 43
 Ṣiffīn, battle of 139
 Sihālī, Quṭb al-Dīn 516
sihr *see* magic
 Sijilmāsa 282
 al-Sijistānī al-Manṭiqī, Abū Sulaymān 540, 544–545
 al-Sijzī, Aḥmad ibn Muḥammad 582, 583–584, 625 n202
 Sikandār, Lodhi sultan 666
sikbāj (meat dish) 754, 756, 759

Index

- silk
 cultural role 684, 686, 693, 726
 production 277, 303, 305, 371
silsila ('spiritual pedigree' of Sufi *tariqa*) 86
 al-Simnānī 471
 sin 42
 Sinān (architect) 11, 328, 702
 Sinān ibn Thābit 663
 Sind 99, 194, 293, 304
 Sindhi language 439
 singers, female 371, 391–394, 749
 Sinjār, Jabal 137
sīra
 biography 231, 458–459, 461, 468–470;
 see also Muḥammad, the Prophet
 (biography)
 heroic romance 412
 Sirāf 716
 al-Sirāfi, Abū Sa'īd 544
 Sirāj 'Aḥf 456
 Sirāj Awrangābādī 440–441
 Sirāj al-Dīn wa'l-Dunyā 619–620
al-Sirājiyya 177–178
Sīrat 'Anṭar 680
Sīrat Baybars 680
Sīrat dhāt al-himma 680
 Sirhindī, Shaykh Aḥmad 11–12, 14, 101
 Sirhindī, Yaḥyā 456
Sirr al-asrār 6, 649–650
Sirr al-khalīqa 650
 Sivas/Sīvās 314, 317
 Sīvāsī, 'Abd al-Aḥad Nūrī, and Sīvāsīyya 93
siyāsa(t) 235
 slaughtering of livestock 751–752, 759
 slaves and slavery
 abolition in India 181–182
 military and palace elite 3, 11, 522–524;
 'Abbāsīd 233, 311–312; Ṣafāvīd 266, 273;
 Turks 48, 198, 268; *see also* Janissaries;
 mamlūks
 musicians 373, 391–394, 749
 and population estimates 322
 in pre-Islamic Arabia 391–392
 prisoners of war 11, 186, 191
 states established by freed generals 236, 268,
 312
 trade in 315
 in USA 472
 see also manumission *and under* Africa;
 al-Andalus; conversion to Islam;
 education; sexuality; women
 smallpox 658–659
 social status
 and conversion 186, 196
 craftsmen 728
 hierarchy 249, 259–260
 and learning 498
 social welfare *see* charity; Sufism (social role)
 Ṣofiyān-Çelebī faction of Bektāshīyya 98
 Sogdia (Sughd) 754
 soils 292, 297
 Sokoto caliphate 527–528, 530
 Solomon 643
 Somalia 92
 sorghum 292, 293–294, 299
 soup kitchens 762
 sovereignty *see* kingship
 Söz, Sayyid Muḥammad Mīr 442
 Spain *see* al-Andalus
 spectacles 638
 spices 754, 759, 760, 763
 spinning 371, 734, 739
 spirits, summoning of 651
 squinches 700, 717–718
 stagnation, perceived 171, 217
 stars, influence of 640, 646
 see also astrology
 state
 commercial monopolies 304
 dawla acquires meaning of 228–229
 and law 142–144, 166–168, 176, 177, 180, 182–183
 shepherd and flock image 231, 248
 state formation in South Asia 255–256,
 268–269
 weakness of pre-modern 143
 Western perceptions of governance 180
 see also political theory and organisation *and*
 under agriculture; medicine;
 migrations; Sufism; 'ulamā'
 statecraft *see* political theory and organisation
 steelyards 349
 Stephanos' translation of Dioscorides 621
 Stephanus (Byzantine monk, alchemist) 652
 stirrups 288, 289
 Stoicism 658
 stoning of adulterers 37, 377
 storytelling 6, 522, 525–526, 680
 and historiography 445, 452
 and popular education 530
 religious 58, 228
 Turkish 426, 431, 432
 streetplayers 499
 stucco 693, 700, 712, 715, 735
 see also under *mih̄rābs*
 study circles *see* *ḥalqas*

Index

- Şubh, concubine of al-Ḥakam II 736
 al-Subkī, Tāj al-Dīn 459 n4, 630
 submission, Islam as 24, 29, 44
 succession 312
 by designation (*naṣṣ*) 107, 113, 123, 132, 243, 312
 Mamlūk competitive 314–315
 nomadic patrimonial 237, 269, 287
 Qurʾān implies model of dynastic 225
 without primogeniture 265, 287
 see also under Muḥammad, the Prophet
 Sudan 91, 92, 219, 486
 Sufism 11–12, 45–47, 60
 African nineteenth-century revival 92–93
 and *aḥl al-bayt* 119
 and animism 92
 antinomianism 57
 asceticism 45–46, 102
 assumptions and goals 62–64
 Baghdadi tradition 65, 68–73, 85
 brotherhoods *see orders below*
 and Christian monasticism 53, 62
 clothing 62, 65, 84–85, 95, 519, 520
 under colonial rule 104
 community living 86, 102
 convents 373–374, 512
 covenant between God and human race 63–64
 dance 57, 80, 85, 95
 early 64–67; proto-Sufis 62–64
 early modern 11–12
 ecstatic 57, 70, 71–72, 80, 85, 95
 erotic mysticism 63, 65, 67–68, 373
 fanāʾ (passing away of human self) 46, 70, 79, 80
 fasting 94–95
 homoeroticism 378
 Ibn Tufayl and 555
 international networks 520
 ‘intoxicated’ *see* ecstatic *above*
 ‘*irfān*’ influenced by 12
 in Janissary corps 428
 khalīfas (Sufis of highest level) 520
 khalwa (retreat) 83, 86, 95
 Konya as centre 79, 314, 427, 467–468
 in Kūfa 65, 68
 later 83–84
 and law 57, 77, 85, 519
 literature 78–81, 102; apologetic 73;
 hagiography 89; Persian 76, 415, 420, 421; Turkish 426, 427–428, 430–431; Urdu 437, 438, 439; *see also* poetry *below*
 lodges 307; *see also khānqāhs; ribāṭs; zāwiyas*
 longevity 60
 love as metaphor 63, 65, 67–68, 373, 393, 430–431
 and magic 633, 642–643, 646–647, 648
 metaphysics 81–83
 miracles (*karāmāt*) 195, 467, 629
 multiple affiliations 102, 103
 music 57, 80, 83–84, 745, 749
 name 46, 61, 65
 neo-Sufi movement 61
 oral culture 86
 orders: attempted reconciliation 102;
 see also ṭarīqas and individual names
 origins and name 46, 61–62, 65
 philosophy 81–82, 555
 pilgrimages 68
 poetry; Arabic 63, 67–68, 78–81, 83–84, 102, 103; Persian 420, 421; ritualised ‘listening’, *samāʾ* 83–84; Turkish 426, 430–431; Urdu 437, 438; wine poetry 397
 political involvement 63, 104
 popular preachers 525
 and Qurʾān 62
 and reform, nineteenth-century 14, 92–93
 regional traditions 67–68, 90–104; *see also under individual regions*
 rituals 83–84; initiation 86, 519; *see also dhikr*
 self-mortification 61, 62, 102
 shajara (spiritual lineage) 519
 and Shamanism 92
 and Shīʿism 118, 119, 121, 130, 264
 ‘sober’ 70, 72, 84, 85, 94
 social role 88, 90, 102, 275, 762
 spread 84–86; *see also* Naqshbandiyya (geographical extent)
 and state 63, 90–91, 98, 101, 103; in India 100, 101–102
 systematisation 73–76
 teachers *see shaykhs*
 twentieth-century decline and revival 60–61
 and Umayyads 46, 61–62, 63
 warfare *see jihād above*
 women 368–369, 373–374, 467, 512, 519, 529
 and Zaydis of Yemen 136
 see also dervishes; *dhikr*, gnosis; Ibn al-ʿArabī; initiation rituals; meditation; oneness (of being); saints; *shaykhs*; *ṭarīqas*: individual orders, especially

Index

- Mawlawiyya; Naqshbandiyya: *and under individual regions and places and: adab*; biography; conversion to Islam; education; endowments; al-Ghazālī; *ḥadīth*; Hinduism; *jihād*; kingship; Ṣafavid empire; Sunnism; travel; ‘*ulamā*’
- Ṣufriyya 140
- suftajas* (letters of credit) 337
- sugar
in cooking 756, 760
cultivation of cane 216, 293–294, 304, 305, 308
- Sughd (Sogdia) 754
- ṣuḥba* (‘discipleship’) 170, 506
- al-Suhrawardī, Shihāb al-Dīn Abū Ḥafṣ ‘Umar 84, 100, 519
- al-Suhrawardī, Shihāb al-Dīn Yaḥyā 77, 121, 237, 410–411, 560–561
- Suhrawardiyya 85, 99–100, 102
- al-Sulamī, Abū ‘Abd al-Raḥmān 75–76, 466, 467
- Ṣulayḥid dynasty of Yemen 128, 129, 135, 360
- Sulaymānī faction of Ṭayyibiyya 129
- Süleymān I the Magnificent (*or* the Lawgiver), Ottoman emperor
architectural work 515, 692
cultural patronage 430, 486, 724
and Hürrem 369, 633
and law 259, 263–264
legitimation 262
as poet 430
- Süleymān Çelebi 428
- ṣulḥ* (amicable settlement) 168
- al-Ṣūlī, Abū Bakr 400–401, 447
- Sulṭān-Ḥusayn, Ṣafavid shah 265
- Sulṭān Walad ibn Jalāl al-Dīn Rūmī 80, 428
- sultanate 233, 312
and caliphate 245, 253–254
see also under Ottoman empire
- Sulṭāniyya, Iran 279, 720–721
- Sumatra 102–103, 196–197, 219–220, 256, 258
- Summaria Alexandrinorum* (‘*Jawāmi*’ al-*Iskandarāniyyīn*) 662
- sunan* *see sunna*
- Sünbül Sinān al-Dīn, Yūsuf, and al-Sünbūliyya 93
- sundials 580, 596, 600
- sunna* 7–8, 40
Prophetic 37, 152–153
as source of legal authority 39, 151–153, 155–156
- Sunnism 3, 8, 51, 105–106
- ‘Abbāsids as champions 112
- madrāsas* and 9–10, 512, 514
- political theory of caliphate and imamate 32, 34, 105, 240–245
- al-Qādir’s statement of faith 34
- revival 51, 237, 246, 512
- and sciences 573
- and Shī‘ism 8, 9–10, 51, 105–106, 136, 138;
interaction and development of public law 260–263; schism over imamate 108, 226; similarities in political theory 241–243, 248; tenth-century sharpening of division 9–10, 47–48, 49
- and Sufism 46–47, 53–54, 73–74, 75, 76–78, 83, 500–501
- Turks as champions 9–10, 11, 47, 51, 117, 260–262; Ottomans 55–56, 260–261, 262–263
- ‘*ulamā*’ and 7–8, 35–36, 105–106, 130
- sūqs* (markets) 5, 275, 278, 282
- sürgün* *see* deportations; Ottoman
- sūr-nāmes* (festivals) 432
- surveying 502, 580, 584, 588, 590
- Sūs 304
- suyūrghāl* (tax concession) 286
- al-Suyūṭī, Jalāl al-Dīn 462, 470, 504, 510–511, 517, 518, 526, 528
- Swahili literature 4
- syah* (title of kings of Melaka) 254
- syahbandars* (port masters) 255, 256
- syloges, numismatic 341–342
- sylogistic reasoning 81–82
- synagogues, restrictions on 203, 204
- syntax, Arabic 668
- Syr Darya region 95
- Syria
agriculture 286, 299, 304, 331
- Aramaic language 213
- art and architecture 512, 620–621, 685, 705, 712
- ascetics 60
- astrology and magic 629–630
- ceramics 730, 739
- Christianity 42, 207–208, 620–621, 732
- cities settled by Arabs after conquest 309
- conversion to Islam 190
- Crusades 49
- demography 207–208, 307–308, 322–324
- Druzes 127, 128
- educational–charitable complexes 512
- Egyptian contacts 318, 320
- Fātimid conquest 232
- historiography 448, 449, 450, 451

Index

- Ilkhāns ravage northern 285
 legal sub-culture 172
 magic healing 631
 Mamlūk sultanate 48, 246, 251–254, 286,
 314–316, 629–630
 metalwork 731, 732
 nomads 283–284, 289, 326–327
 Ottoman rule 11, 130, 289, 323–324; tax
 registers 320, 321
 papermills 677
 plague 329
 sciences 574, 658
 Shī'ism 10, 117, 129, 130, 137–138, 320
 Sufism 65, 67
 'ulamā' culture 11, 320
see also individual places and dynasties
- Syriac language
 script 669
 translation: Greek to Syriac 538, 589–590,
 662; Syriac to Arabic 538, 539, 621
- al-Ṭabarānī, Abū Sa'd al-Maymūn ibn al-Qāsim
 137
 al-Ṭabarī, Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn Jarīr 231,
 446, 448, 569, 678
 translation into Persian 414, 454
 al-Ṭabarī, Rabban 663
 Ṭabaristān 133–134
 Tabrīz 119, 284–285, 319, 327, 577
Tabula smaragdina (al-Lawḥ al-zumurrudī)
 649–650
tadhkiras (Urdu literary form) 441
tafsīr see Qur'anic exegesis
 Taftāzānī, Sa'd al-Dīn 504, 514
tahāra (ritual purification) 144
 Tābert 140
 Ṭāhir ibn al-Ḥusayn (the Ambidextrous) 231,
 572, 579
 Ṭāhir al-Ḥusaynī, Shāh 122
 Ṭāhirids 191, 277, 573–574
see also Ṭāhir ibn al-Ḥusayn
 Ṭahmāsp I, Abū al-Faḥr, Shāh 120, 630, 738
taḥrīrs see taxation (registers)
 al-Ṭaḥṭāwī, Rifā'a Rāfi' 484
ṭā'ifa biographies 462–464, 466–467
ṭā'ifa kingdoms of Spain 10, 238, 310
 Tāj al-'ālam, queen of Aceh 258
 Tāj Maḥal 721
 Tāj al-Mulk 699
Tāj al-salāḥīn 257
takhayyur 182–183
 Talas, battle of 311
 tales *see* storytelling
- talfiq* 182–183
ta'lim, Nizārī doctrine of 130
 Ta'limiyya *see* Nizāriyya
 al-Ṭāluwī, Darwish Muḥammad 412, 413
 Tamīm ibn al-Mu'izz 402
tanāsukh see metempsychosis
 tanneries 306–307
tannūr
 iron pan 752
 oven 757–758
 Ṭanṭa 357–358
 al-Tanūkhī 394, 404, 407, 447
 Ṭāq-i Bustān rock reliefs 685
 Ṭāqī al-Dīn 515
taqiyya ('dissimulation') 127, 140
 Shī'ite 111, 113, 124, 130, 132, 138
taqlīd ('imitation') 39–40, 52
Taqvim-i Vekāyi 433
 Taqvimhāne-i Āmire 433
ta'rīkh 444
Tārīkh-i Sīstān 415, 417, 454
 Tarim basin 424
ṭarīqas (Sufi 'orders') 54, 60, 84–86
see also individual orders, especially
 Mawlawiyya; Naqshbandiyya
Ṭarīqa-yi Muḥammadi 101
Ṭarīqa-yi nubuwwat 101
tarjama (biographical text) 458–459, 470, 471
 Tarmashirin Khān 198–199
 Tarsūsī 415
 Tatars 430, 486
 Taurus mountains 284
 Tawaddud (figure in *Thousand and one nights*)
 392
tawā'if see ṭā'ifa
tawakkul (complete reliance on God) 65–67
tawḥīd (divine unity and uniqueness) 533, 534,
 540–541, 588
 al-Tawḥīdī, Abū Ḥayyān 398, 401
ta'wīl (allegorical interpretation of Qur'an)
 126, 138
- taxation
 and agriculture 290, 293, 295, 296, 301, 302
 of *ahl al-dhimma* 29–30, 203, 321
 caliph's responsibility 35
 on commerce 254
 conversion to evade 186, 188, 191
 exemptions 321
 farming of 263, 301, 302, 321
 al-Ma'mūn's reforms 570
mawālī administrators 228
 plague affects revenue 329
 population estimation based on 321–322

Index

- taxation (cont.)
 registers 320–325, 326
 religious nature 283
 revolts in Egypt 188
 of singers and prostitutes 371
suyūrghāl 286
 under Tīmūr 317
see also alms-tax; *iqṭā'āt*; poll-tax; and under
individual states and regions
- Ṭayfūr 447
 al-Ṭayyib 129
 Ṭayyibiyya 91, 127, 129
ta'ziya (Shī'ite passion plays) 108
 technology
 agricultural 290, 291, 293–294
 Arabic terminology developed 538,
 564–565
 European 16
 paper as aid to development 9
see also instruments, scientific; sciences
- Tegüder 199
 Tekke Turkmen 289
 tekonyms 461
 telescopes 638, 639
 tents 285, 739
 terminology, Arabic
 mathematical 580
 in new *adab* 406
 Persian use, on prosody 414
 philosophical 9, 538, 550–551
 scientific and technical 538, 564–565
- Ternate, sultans of 256–257
 Tetuan 361
 textiles 277
 artistic influence 6, 693, 726
 domestic and rural production 303, 371,
 726–727, 734, 739, 742
 inscriptions 678, 712–714, 734
 luxury 277, 686, 693
 maps on 613, 625 n202, 625
 nomad production 742
 Qur'ānic references 686
 royal workshops 736
ṭirāz 277, 712–714, 733, 734
 trade 6, 277, 726
 urban culture and luxury 733, 734
 and urban economy 277, 295
 in al-Wāṣitī's manuscript illustrations
 733, 734
 women's production 371, 726–727,
 734, 739
see also individual fibres and clothing
- textual commentary 37
- al-Tha'ālībī 402, 404–405, 406–407
 Thābit ibn Qurra 447, 539, 573
 astronomy 539, 595, 598, 600, 601, 602
 magic 631
 mathematics 539, 580, 582, 631
 mechanics 586
 musical theory 747
 Thābit ibn Sinān ibn Thābit ibn Qurra
 395–396
 Thailand 481, 482
 Thā'irid dynasty 134
 Thawrī 164
 theatre 108, 431, 499
 shadow 10, 431
 theatre-state, Geertz's model of 255
 theft, punishment for 149
 theme / meaning distinction 440, 441
 Themistius 539, 559
 theology (*kalām*) 41–44, 500, 532–535
 Christian theology compared 41–42
 Ibn Sinā's influence 561
 and mathematics 587, 588
 omniscience and omnipotence of God 43
 and philosophy 126, 532–535, 552–553, 629
 traditionists' rejection 43, 51
see also under Baghdad; Shī'ism
- Theophrastus 539
 theosophy; school of Iṣfahān 120–121
 Thessaloniki 310, 322
Thousand and one nights 392, 402, 412, 680
thughūr al-Islām (frontiers) 479
 Tibet 479, 480
 al-Tibrīzī, Abū Zakariyyā' Yaḥyā (al-Khaṭīb al-
 Tibrīzī) 406
 al-Tifāshī, Aḥmad ibn Yūsuf 375, 376, 378, 394,
 748–749
 Tigris valley 292, 293, 304
 al-Tijānī, Shaykh Aḥmad 91–92
 Tijāniyya 91–92, 93
 tiles, glazed 625, 693, 696–697,
 709–710
 and cartography 617, 625
 in Topkapı Palace 726, 727, 735
- Tīm 718
 Timbuktu 14, 193, 508, 516, 517–518, 522
 timekeeping 577, 586, 592, 594–596, 619–620,
 638–639
 Timothy I, Nestorian patriarch 568
 Tīmūr 50, 471
 conquests 317, 421
 court in Samarqand 280, 504, 750
 legitimising ideology 198–199, 250
yāsā and *sharī'a* under 250

Index

- Timūrid empire
 agriculture 300
 architecture 512, 619, 627–628
 astrology 630
 cartography 614, 619
 ceramics 725
 Chaghatay Turkic language 426
 Chinese contacts 4, 481
 historiography 416, 455
 land allocations 251
 law 250
 learning 512, 514, 515, 528, 664
 literary culture 427, 722–723
 magic 630
 mathematics 512, 627–628
 medicine 664, 665
 Ottoman admiration for culture 429
 patronage 512, 514, 515, 614, 664, 665
 sciences 4, 504, 514, 624, 664, 665
 scripts 429
 succession system 237
 Sufism 12
 women poets and scholars 528
- Ṭinnīs 618, 619
 ṭirāz 277, 712–714, 733, 734
 Tirmidh 716
 al-Tirmidhī al-Ḥākim 71, 471
 Tlemcen 749
 Tokolor 92
 Toledo 309, 703
 tombs
 Fātimid 720
 Mughal 626
 pious visits to saints' *see ziyārāt*
 tomb towers, transhumants' 284
 Topkapı Palace *see under* Istanbul (palaces)
- topography
 and agriculture 292
 literary descriptions 447, 464
- toponyms, works on 490
- towers 284, 705–708
see also minarets
- towns *see* cities
- toys and games 521
- trade 6, 13
 and agriculture 290, 301, 302–305
 and cartography 623
 and conversions to Islam 6, 192–194, 197, 518
 and education 522, 529
 European companies' monopolies 305
 law on 41
 nomads and 296, 297
 urban–rural 295, 297
see also commerce *and under* individual regions and commodities
- traditional sciences ('*ulūm naqliyya*) 36–44, 499–501, 503–505
 education in 510, 515, 518
see also ḥadīth; law and jurisprudence; Qur'ān; Qur'ānic exegesis; Sufism; theology
- traditionists 43, 132, 155–156, 406, 445
 and imamate 230–231
 al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdadī's biography 406
 and political ethics and statecraft 246–248
 Shī'ite 8, 113, 116, 117, 121–122
see also 'ulamā'
- transhumants 283, 284–285, 297
- Transjordan 299
- translation movement 8–9, 535–540, 565–572, 579–580
 'Abbāsīd revolution and 566, 567–568
 Banū Mūsā and 579–580
 Bayt al-Ḥikma and 569
 caliphs' role: al-Mahdī 568–569; *see also under* al-Ma'mūn; al-Manṣūr
 Christian involvement 535–536, 566
 Ḥunayn ibn Iṣḥāq al-'Ibādī's circle 536, 538–540
 al-Kindī and circle 535–538, 570–571, 573, 579–580
 motivation 565, 590
 origins 565–568
 paper making and 590
 Persian element 535, 567–568, 570, 590
 prestige of translated works 538, 590
 and rational scepticism 42–43, 395
 and Umayyads 566–567, 590
 written culture furthered by 677
see also under astrology; astronomy; cartography; China; conquests; Europe; Greek culture; Hebrew language; Latin language; mathematics; medicine; natural world; Persian language; pharmacology; philosophy; Sanskrit language; sciences; Syriac language
- translations, other *see under* Europe; Mamlūk sultanate; Ottoman empire; Persian language; Qur'ān
- transmission of knowledge *see* education; scholarship (authority to transmit); *and under* oral culture

Index

- Transoxania 311, 512, 663, 712
 legal subculture 172, 178
 religion 73, 95, 117, 124, 228
see also individual places and states
- transport 274, 478
see also shipping; travel
- transvestism 379
- travel
 accounts of 412, 415–416, 431, 471, 484–487;
 European 633–634
 and dissemination of knowledge 293, 639
 maps in books on 623
 Sufis' 5, 320, 530
see also pilgrimages; scholarship (mobility and travel)
- treaties 669, 670
- trees, sacred 218
- tribal society, Arab 285
 in *amṣār* 275, 276, 285
 contingents in caliphal armies 228, 229, 275, 309
 genealogies 285, 461, 472–473
 history; negotiation of acceptable version 472–473
 modern; classical style of oral autobiography 472–473
 women and customary law 362
see also Arabic poetry (pre-Islamic); Arabs and Arabia (pre-Islamic period); Bedouin; and under conquests
- trickster, literary figure of 410, 419
- trigonometry 587, 594, 600, 601
- Trinity, Christian doctrine of 20, 21, 41
- Tripolitania 299
- al-Ṭufayl ibn 'Amr al-Dawsī 185
- Tughluq-shāhs 252
- al-Ṭughrā'ī, Abū Ismā'īl 653
- Tulip Era 431–432, 483, 637–638
- Ṭūlūnids 191, 312
- tumenggung* (police chief in Melaka) 255, 256
- Ṭumṭum the Indian 649
- Tunis 331, 511, 749
- Tunisia 91, 318, 320, 481–482, 521
- Turba philosophorum* 652, 653
- turbans, outsize 499
- Turfān; Amīn mosque 705, 707
- Turkic language(s)
 dictionaries and grammars 425, 426, 432
 Eastern Turkic 425, 426–427, 429–430;
see also Chaghatay Turkic mamlūks use as lingua franca 315
 translations into *see under* Mamlūk sultanate
 Ottoman empire Persian language
 Western Turkic 426, 427–429, 430–432;
see also Ottoman Turkish language
see also under scripts
- Turkish literature 424–433
 Arabic influence 4, 424, 425, 426, 428, 430, 431
 drama 431
 early Islamic period 425
 Eastern Turkic 426–427, 429–430
 historiography 427, 431
mahallīleşme 'localisation movement' 431
 Mamlūk 427
 memoirs 432, 483
 oral culture 424, 426
 Persian influences 424
 poetry 426–427, 428, 430–432; Arabic influence 4, 425, 426, 428, 430, 431; Sufi 426, 430–431
 post-medieval 429–432
 pre-Islamic period 424
 proverbs 432
 Qarakhānid 425
 regional 426–432
 Western Turkic 427–429, 430–432
see also under biography; epic poetry; folk literature; geography; Mamlūk sultanate; Ottoman empire; storytelling; Sufism (literature)
- Turkistan 95, 286–287, 426, 429
- Turkmen or Turcomans 119, 284, 288, 299
 languages 426, 429
 Tekke 289
see also Oğuz Turks; Qizilbāsh
- Turko-Mongolian empires 249–251
 cities 281
 court culture 271
 law 250–251, 258–259
 social stratification system 259–260
see also Mughal empire; Ottoman empire; Şafavid empire
- Turks 48, 311–314
 acculturation in Muslim world 312–313
 administration using local elites 316
 education and scholarship 424
 genealogy 429–430
 law 237, 269
 mathematics 581
 mercenaries in 'Abbāsīd armies 311–312
 migrations 311–314
 in Mongol armies 316
 nomadic 48, 237, 288–289; *see also* Turkmen

Index

- origins 48
 Persianate culture 1, 3–4
 religion: conversion to Islam 186–187,
 198–199; Turkic cults 99, 218, 313;
see also under Sunnism
 state formation 48, 312
 transhumants 284
 women's political power 238
see also preceding four entries and
 Ghaznavids; *ghilmān*; Ottoman
 empire; Qarakhānids; Saljūqs
- al-Ṭurṭūshī, Abū Bakr 403–404
 al-Ṭūsī, Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan
 (Shaykh al-Ṭā'ifa) 117, 245
 al-Ṭūsī, Naṣīr al-Dīn 4, 514, 624
 astronomy 598, 606, 612, 623–624; Ṭūsī
 Couple 607–608, 607, 610
 philosophy and theology 118, 248, 562
 al-Tustarī 75
 tutors (*atabegs*) 238
 Twelvers (Ithnā 'Asharī Shī'ites) 47, 106,
 114–122
 Akhbārī/Uṣūlī (traditionism/rationalism)
 opposition 121–122
 Baghdad school 116–117, 121, 122, 135, 533
 and imamate 113
 law 115, 182–183
 and Mu'tazila 116–117, 121
 Ṣafavids establish in Iran 10, 12,
 55, 134
 and Sufism 118, 119, 121
 traditionalism 115, 116, 121–122
- 'Ubayd-i Zākānī 421
 'Ubayd Allāh Aḥrār 80–81
 'Ubayd Allāh Khān, Uzbek ruler 261
 'Udhri manner of poetry 392
 Udovitch, A. L. 336–337, 352
 Uighur script 424, 425, 429
 Ujjān area 284–285
 Ukraine 313–314
 'ulamā' 33–36, 54–56
 authority 20, 33–34
 and caliphate 33–34
 historians 445, 447, 450–451
 and Ibn al-'Arabī 82–83
 legal judgments 34–35
 and magic 629
 in Malay sultanates 255
 under Mamlūk sultanate 10–11, 55, 252,
 451, 499
 al-Manṣūr and 34
 in Ottoman empire 55–56, 264
 payment 52–53
 and popular preachers 525–526
 professionalisation 52–53, 514
 and state 33–34, 54–56
 and Sufism 46–47, 501
 Sunnī doctrine 7–8, 35–36, 105–106, 130
 travel 529–530
 turbans 499
 and women's status 359, 526
see also consensus (scholarly); traditionists;
and under biography; *jihād*; Syria;
ziyārāt
- Ulugh Beg 4, 250, 512, 514, 624
 'ulūm 'aqliyya *see* rational sciences
 'ulūm naqliyya *see* traditional sciences
 'Umān *see* Oman
umanā' al-ḥukm ('trustees of the court')
 160, 161
 'Umar, Pact of ('*ahd* 'Umar) 202–203
 'Umar (I) ibn al-Khaṭṭāb, caliph 30, 139, 202
 and law 32, 149, 150, 151, 152
 and Qur'ān 149, 150, 672
 and religious observance 32, 149
 Shī'ite attitudes towards 132, 135
 social organisation 148–149
 succession to caliphate 107, 225–226
 titles 226
 'Umar (II) ibn 'Abd al-'Azīz ibn Marwān 202
 'Umar ibn Abī Rabī'a 392
 'Umar al-Khayyām 4, 418, 582, 586, 627
 'Umar Rūshānī 93
 'Umar Sikkīnī (Ömer the Cutler) 96–97
 'Umāra al-Yamanī 391
 al-'Umarī *see* Ibn Faḍl Allāh al-'Umarī
 Umayyads 30, 31
 agricultural improvement 286
 Arab superiority under 109, 227–228,
 285, 590
 Damascus as capital 276
 extravagance 33, 62
 and law 32
 nomad sedentarisation 298
 opposition to 31–32, 33, 46, 61–62, 63
 ornament 714–715
 overthrow *see* 'Abbāsids ('Abbāsīd
 revolution)
 power-sharing among ruling kin 288
 religious authority 32–33
 title *khalīfat allāh* 32–33, 226
see also Cordoba, Umayyad caliphate of *and*
under administration; palaces;
 translation movement
 Umm 'Amr bint Abī Marwān 370

Index

- umma* ('community') 23, 231
 'Umrān, house of 225
 United States of America; ex-slaves'
 autobiographies 472
 universalism, Islamic 30
 'Unṣurī 419
 'Uqaylids 117
 'Uqba ibn Nāfi' 696
 urbanisation *see* cities
 al-'Urḍī, Mu'ayyad al-Dīn 606,
 608–609, 609
urdū (Mughal royal camp) 270, 271, 436
 Urdu language
 history and development 436–437,
 438, 443
 translation of Qur'ān into 441
 Urdu literature 434–443
 in Deccan 438–441
 in Delhi 436, 440, 441–442
 in Gujarat 437
 Hindu writers 442
 historiography 441
 meaning/theme distinction 440, 441
 Persianate style, *sabk-i hindī* 440
 poetry 4, 436, 437, 438, 440, 441
 prose 436, 441; Fort William College style
 441, 443
 Sufi 437, 438, 439
 women writers 442
 'Urwa ibn al-Zubayr 445
 Usāma ibn Munqidh 471
 Üsküdar 367, 369–370
 Uṣṭāth (Eustathios) 536
uṣūl al-fiqh *see under* law and jurisprudence
 Uṣūlī school of Shī'ism 121–122
 'Uṭbī 454–455
 'Uthmān ibn 'Abd al-Mannān al-Muḥṭadī 636
 'Uthmān ibn 'Affān (caliph) 30, 107, 225–226
 assassination 30, 32, 107–108, 226
 attitudes to legitimacy 132, 139, 228, 230
 official recension of Qur'ān 32, 36, 672–673,
 674, 690
 utilitarianism 587
 Uzbeks 250, 260–262, 281, 430
 'Uzlat, 'Abd al-Walī 437

 vaulting, *muqarnas* 3, 4, 701, 716–719, 735
 vegetables 292, 293–294, 755, 760
 vegetal decoration, stylised 682, 692, 708,
 714, 719
 vegetarianism 762–763
 Venice 327, 487, 637
 Vesalius, Andreas 663

 victory, architectural symbols of 705–708, 724
 Vienna 488, 637
 embassies to 486, 492 n90, 493
 villages 290–291, 331, 739–741
 vinegar 756, 760
 vines 290, 292
 Visigoths 592
 viziers 35, 239–240
 dhimmī: 204
 literature on 239–240, 263
 patronage 572, 574, 579
 and sciences 572, 574, 590
 see also Barmakids
 vocalisation *see under* scripts (Arabic)
 Volga region 317, 427, 429, 481
 Sufism 85, 95
 voluntarism, theological 535

 Wahb ibn Munabbih 445
wahdat (*al-shuhūd*, *al-wujūd*) *see under* oneness
 Wahhābism 12, 14, 59
wā'iz *see* preachers, popular
 Waj'hī (or Wajīhī), Mullā 439
wājib (legal category of the obligatory)
 145–146
 Walī (Urdu poet) 434–435, 436, 437,
 439, 440
 al-Walid I, Umayyad caliph 690–691,
 694, 723
 al-Walid ibn 'Uqba 465
wālide sultān (mother of Ottoman ruler)
 361, 369
 Wallachia 294
 walls, defensive 279–280, 281
 Wangara people 516
waqfs
 documents, Egyptian 339
 educational–charitable complexes 512
 hospitals 662
 and inheritance 513
 landholdings 301–302
 laws 160, 179–180, 272, 513
 Mamlūk ruling elite and 252
 Marāgha Observatory 607
 Ottoman administration 174–175
 in patrimonial–bureaucratic empires 273
 qādīs' supervision 160, 161
 Šafavid 267
 women's endowment 368–370
 al-Wāqidi 445
 Wāqifa 114
 warfare 35, 279–280, 440
 and cartography 613, 619, 637

Index

- magic shirts for 630, 633
 pious warriors 54, 64, 629
 warlords, Ottoman local 273
 al-Warrāq, Ibn Sayyār 754–755, 756
 al-Warrāq, Muḥammad ibn Yūsuf al-Ta'rikhī,
 Abū 'Abd Allāh 490
wasf (descriptive verse) 409
 al-Washshā' 394
 Wāṣil ibn 'Atā' III, 533
 Wāsiṭ 298, 447, 687, 693–694
 al-Wāsiṭī, Yaḥyā ibn Maḥmūd 733, 734
 Waṣṣāf 455
 watches, mechanical 638–639
 water-lifting devices 294, 298, 586, 587
 water rights 290, 293
 water supplies 278–279, 370, 614
 watermelons 293–294, 299
 water-wheels (norias) 294
 al-Wāthiq, 'Abbāsīd caliph 480–481, 663
 wealth *see under* land; money; nomads
 Weber, Max 235
 weights and measures 348–352, 586
West Indies, History of the (Ottoman Turkish)
 477, 492, 493
 Weysī Effendi 453
 wheat 753, 757, 760
 bulghur 762
Widerstandrecht, absence of developed 16
 widows 362, 365, 369
 wine
 poetry on 396, 397, 408, 409
 prohibition 39, 293
 witness, judicial 159, 160, 161, 203
 Wittgenstein, Ludwig 3
 women 355–374
 Christian characterisation of
 virtue 358
 craft production 726–727, 734, 739,
 740–741
 education 371–373, 497, 519, 526–529, 530,
 664; in family 527, 664; as patrons
 513, 526–527; scholars 372–373, 527,
 528–529; as teachers 372–373, 522,
 527–528
 endowments: by wealthy *see* patronage
below; for benefit of disadvantaged
 369–370, 527–528, 530
 and family honour 356–357,
 375, 376
 family relationships 361, 362, 363; *see also*
 motherhood *below* and divorce;
 marriage
ḥadīth transmitted by 372–373, 528
 and law: access to courts 358, 362, 367;
 legal status 183–183 n63, 359,
 362–363, 374
 lesbianism 378
 literary portrayals 358–359, 440, 443
 literary works 373, 391–394, 421, 430,
 441, 528
 misogyny 358–359
 motherhood, and status 356, 361, 366
 and music 371, 373, 391–394, 749
 occupations 363, 370–371
 patronage 368–370, 513, 526, 527–528,
 530, 577
 political influence and power 238, 357,
 359–361
 in public space 356–358, 359, 363, 370–371, 376;
 barred from *madrasas* 372, 527
 religious participation 359, 363, 373–374, 519;
 personal piety and sainthood 373–374,
 467; *zār* cults 219; *see also under* Sufism
 royal: charitable endowments 368–369, 526,
 527–528, 530, 577; embroiderers 371;
 literary and learned 529; mothers of
 rulers 360–361, 369; power and
 influence 238, 357, 360–361; treated by
 woman physician 370
 seclusion 356–357, 359, 370, 372, 376
 sexuality 361, 374–379; social anxiety over
 358–359, 372, 375, 376, 379
 slaves: artistic performers 373, 391–394, 749;
 manumission by women owners 365;
 masters' sexual relations with 356,
 365–366, 376; prostitution 371, 377
 sources on 355
 in tribal culture 362
 variability of social situations 355–356, 360
 veiling 356, 359
 widows 362, 365, 369
see also concubines; divorce; dowries;
 marriage; prostitution; *and under*
 medicine; property
 wonders *see* marvels; miracles
 woodworking; geometric interlace patterns
 708–709
 wool 296, 742
 workforce 295
 women in 363, 370–371
see also corvées; craftsmen; slaves; *and under*
 agriculture
 workshops
 court 575–576, 736–737
ṭirāz 277
 world-view, Muslim 475–478

Index

- worship, Islamic 44–45, 57
writing
 as aid to oral publication of books 506–507
 explosion, late eighth-century 677–678
 of *ḥadīth* 406, 675, 676, 677
 as memory aid 406, 506, 510, 672, 673, 675, 676, 679
 oral society's scepticism about 507
 teaching of 521
 in visual culture 678
 see also graffiti; inscriptions; literary culture;
 Qur'ān (transcription); scripts
written and spoken languages, Arabic
 668–669, 675
- Xauen 361
xenology 482, 494
Xian; Great Mosque 704, 705
- Yahyā ibn Abī Maṣṣūr 591
Yahyā ibn 'Adī 539, 544
Yahyā ibn Khālīd al-Barmakī 569, 572, 579
Yahyā ibn Zayd ibn 'Alī 131
Yahyā al-Shīrwānī 93
Yaman *see* Yemen
Ya'qūb ibn al-Layth 417
Ya'qūb ibn Ṭāriq 591, 595
al-Ya'qūbī 446, 485–486
Yāqūt al-Ḥamawī 401, 410
 biographical works 398–400, 408, 410
 sources 408, 460, 490
 on toponyms 490
Ya'rubids 141
yāsā 250, 251, 259
Yasawiyya 95
Yashbak, amir 450
Yathrib 21, 23, 275
 see also Medina
Yazd 512, 710–711, 711
Yazdī, 'Alī 455, 456
Yazdi, Mehdi Ha'iri 563
Yazīd I, Umayyad caliph 108
al-Yazīdī family 401
Yemen
 agriculture 300, 305
 art and architecture 684–685, 694
 economic history 338
 Ismā'īliyya 3, 124, 128, 129, 136
 Jews 200, 206–207
 law 133, 172
 Ottomans and 136
 silk production 684
 Sufism 85, 92
 Ṣulayhīd dynasty 128, 129, 135, 360
 Zaydiyya 131, 133, 134–136, 229
Yirmisekiz Çelebi Meḥmed Efendi 432, 483, 492 n90
Yoruba people 633
Yūḥannā ibn Ḥaylān 544, 546
Yūḥannā ibn Māsawayh *see* Ibn Māsawayh
Yuknakī, Adīb Aḥmad 425
yūnānī ṭibb 666–667
al-Yūnūnī 451
Yūnus Emre 428
Yūsuf I, Naṣrid ruler of Granada 718
Yūsuf ibn Ṭashfīn, Almoravid ruler 360, 404
Yūsuf 'Adil Khān 269
Yūsuf Khāṣṣ Ḥājib 425, 427
Yūsuf al-Shīrwānī 93
- al-Zabīdī, Murtaḍā 517
Zagros mountains 284, 285
zāhir/bāṭin (exoteric/esoteric) distinction 125
Zāhirī school of law 183
al-Zahrāwī, Abū al-Qāsim 649, 663
zajal (poetic form) 394, 409, 749
zakāt (alms-tax) 27, 28, 29, 144
Zallāqa, battle of 289
Zamān, Muḥammad 724
zamīndārs 272, 273
Zangids 10, 448, 631
zār cults of sub-Saharan Africa 219
zarīf (literary type) 4
al-Zarnūjī 497, 498 n10
Zatallī, Mīr Ja'far 435–436
zāwiya (Sufi lodges) 53, 84, 90
Zayd ibn 'Alī Zayn al-'Ābidīn 111, 131, 133, 229
Zaydiyya 106, 109, 111, 131–136
 Būyids and 115–116
 and early caliphs 132, 136
 in Caspian region 131, 133–134, 135–136, 229
 factions *see* Batriyya; Ḥusayniyya;
 Jārūdiyya; Muṭarrifiyya; Nāṣiriyya;
 Qāsimiyya
 and *ijtihād* 118, 132, 134
 imamate 131–133, 136
 legal schools 133, 135
 and Mu'tazila 132, 133, 134, 135, 136
 in Yemen 131, 133, 134–136, 229
Zayn al-Dīn al-'Irāqī 676
Zaynab (wife of Mamlūk sultan Ināl al-Ajrūd) 363
Zaynab al-Nafzāwīya, Almoravid 360
Zaynab al-Ṭukhiyya 527
Zēb al-Nisā' 529

Index

- zījēs (astronomical tables) 590–592, 597,
 598, 602
 Zirid dynasty 471
 Ziryāb 748
 Ziyād ibn Abīhi 227, 298
 ziyārāt (pious visits and pilgrimages) 57, 68,
 88–89, 90, 92, 120
 revering of trees near shrines 218
 ‘*ulamā*’ and 58, 720
 zodiacal signs 625–626
 zoology 215
 Zoroastrianism 21, 386, 396, 567–568, 573
 Avesta 567, 568
 conversion 189
 dhimmī status 202
 influence on Islam 44
 revival movement 567
 al-Zubayrī 445
 Zuhr, Banū 370
 al-Zuhrī 445, 464